MRF24XA

Low-Power, 2.4 GHz ISM-Band IEEE 802.15.4™ RF Transceiver with Extended Proprietary Features

Features

- IEEE 802.15.4™-2003 and IEEE 802.15.4-2006 Standard Compliant RF transceiver
- Multiple air data rates:
  - 250 kbps (IEEE 802.15.4)
  - 125, 500, 1000, 2000 kbps, co-existence with standard networks
- Configurable TX output power: -17.5 to 0 dBm
- Frame header duration scales with the selected data rate
- On-the-fly, per-frame air-data-rate detection (link-by-link independent air data rates)
- Inferred destination addressing (to further save on framing overheads; optional)

Full Featured MCU Support

- Hardware frame parser
- Hardware CSMA-CA controller, automatic acknowledgement (ACK) and Frame Check Sequence (FCS)
- Supports all Clear Channel Assessment (CCA) modes
- Reports ED, RSSI, LQI, and CFO
- Channel Agility with acknowledgements
- Two independent 128 byte frame buffers
- Streaming mode to maximize throughput
- Automatic Packet retransmit Capability
- Hardware Security Engine (AES-128) and configurable Encryption/Decryption mode

Low-Power

- Extreme minimization of radio ON-time
  - Highest channel-admissible data rate used
  - 20%-70% overall reduction through framing
- 2 Mbps frames can reduce radio ON-time by a factor of 4 to 8 with respect to 250 kbps frames
- 25 mA TX current (typical at 0 dBm)
- 13.5 mA RX current in RX Listen Power-Saving mode
- 15.5-16.5 mA RX current in RX Packet Demodulation mode (data rate and device configuration dependent)
- Deep Sleep, Sleep, Crystal ON, RX Listen Power-Saving modes
- Memory retention in Deep Sleep (<40 nA typical)
- Automated functions minimize MCU ON-time

General

- Low external component count
- Best-in-class battery life preservation
- Supply range: 1.5V to 3.6V
- Compact 32-pin 5x5 mm^2 QFN package
- Temperature range -40^oC to +85^oC
- Certified turnkey-ready solutions available

Applications

- IEEE 802.15.4/ZigBee® systems (RF4CE, and so on)
- Industrial monitoring and control
- IEEE 1588 precise timing protocol networks
- Automatic meter reading
- Home building automation
- Low-power wireless sensor networks
- Consumer electronics, voice and audio

Pin Diagram

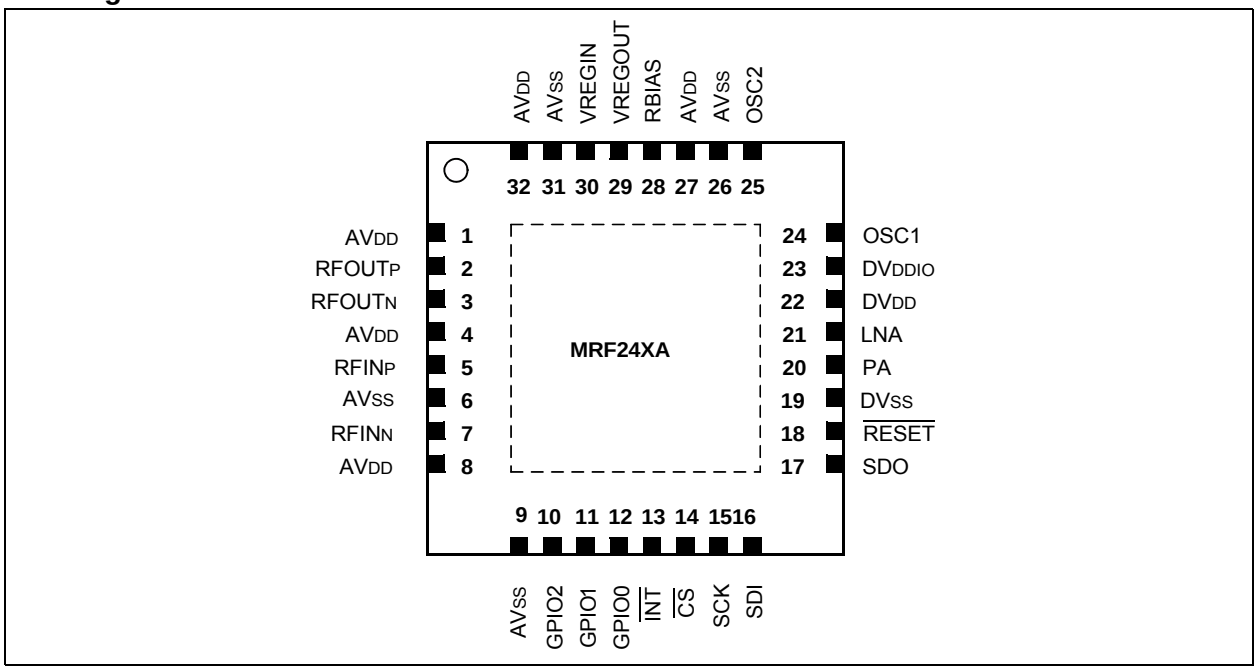


Table of Contents

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; **http://www.microchip.com**
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

MRF24XA is an IEEE 802.15.4™ Standard compliant 2.4 GHz RF transceiver with feature extensions. MRF24XA integrates the PHY and MAC functionality in a single chip solution. MRF24XA implements a low-cost, low-power, high data rate (125 kbps to 2 Mbps) Wireless Personal Area Network (WPAN) device. All the data rates have the same spectral shape requiring identical bandwidth. At 125 kbps data rate Direct Sequence Spread Spectrum (DSSS) is combined with error correction and coding for maximum range and robustness against interference. The 2 Mbps data rate can be used to minimize radio ON-time, therefore extending battery life. Figure 1-1 illustrates a simplified block diagram of a MRF24XA wireless node. MRF24XA interfaces to many popular Microchip PIC® microcontrollers through a 4-wire serial SPI interface, interrupt, GPIO, and $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pins.

MRF24XA can also handle external Power Amplifier (PA) and Low Noise Amplifier (LNA).

MRF24XA provides hardware support for:

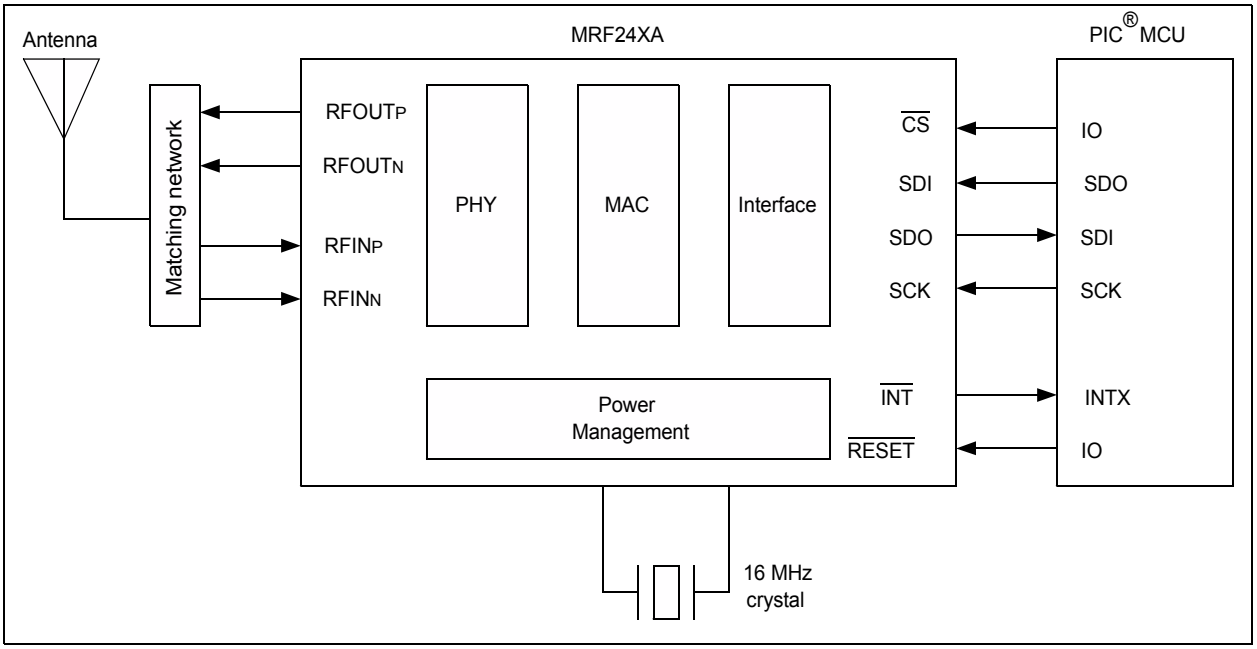
- Energy detection
- Carrier sense
- Four CCA modes
- CSMA-CA algorithm
- Automatic packet retransmission
- Automatic acknowledgement
- Independent transmit and receive buffers
- Security engine supports encryption and decryption for MAC sublayer and upper layer
- Inferred destination addressing
- Channel agility with ACKs
- Battery monitoring

These features reduce the processing load, allowing the use of low-cost 8-bit microcontrollers.

MRF24XA is compatible with Microchip's ZigBee®, MiWi™ and MiWi P2P software stacks. Each software stack is available as a free download, including source code, from the Microchip web site:

http://www.microchip.com/wireless.

FIGURE 1-1: MRF24XA WIRELESS NODE BLOCK DIAGRAM



NOTES:

2.0 HARDWARE DESCRIPTION

2.1 Overview

MRF24XA is an IEEE 802.15.4 Standard compliant 2.4 GHz RF transceiver with extended feature set for longer battery life, higher throughput and increased operating range.

MRF24XA integrates the PHY and MAC functionality in a single chip solution. Figure 2-1 illustrates a block diagram of the MRF24XA circuitry.

The frequency synthesizer is clocked by an external 16 MHz crystal and generates a 2.4 GHz frequency RF carrier.

The receiver is a zero-IF architecture consisting of a Low Noise Amplifier, down conversion mixers, channel filters and baseband amplifiers with a Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI).

The transmitter is a direct conversion architecture with a 0 dBm maximum output (typical) and 17.5 dB power control range.

The internal transmitter and receiver circuits have separate RFP and RFN input/output pins. These pins are connected to impedance matching circuitry (balun) and antenna. An external Power Amplifier and/or Low Noise Amplifier can be controlled through the PA and LNA pins.

Three general purpose Input/Output (GPIO) pins can be configured for control or monitoring purposes.

The power management circuitry consists of an integrated Low Dropout (LDO) voltage regulator and a 5-bit resolution Battery Monitor Block. MRF24XA can be placed into a low-current (<40 nA typical) Deep Sleep mode.

The Media Access Controller (MAC) circuitry can sequence the transmit, receive and enable the security operations automatically. The host MCU has detailed control over these mechanisms through register configurations and by the Frame Control (FCtrl) field embedded in the downloaded formatted frames. Three alternative frame formats are supported: IEEE 802.15.4 2003, 2006 compliant MAC frame formats and a flexible and power-efficient advanced MAC frame format, which is proprietary. Before launching transmission, the host must load the buffer with a formatted frame. The hardware can optionally perform encryption and message integrity code appending as configured, then sends the frame appending a Frame Check Sequence (FCS).

Acknowledge reception and automatic retransmissions can be sequenced autonomously by the hardware.

In reception, the format of the demodulated frame is verified. Depending on the configuration, duplicate frames, frames with corrupted FCS or address mismatch can be discarded. On reception of valid frames, automatic acknowledge sending, decryption and message integrity checking are supported.

By default, separate buffers are reserved for transmission and reception. Alternatively, either the Transmit Streaming (TX-Streaming) or the Receive Streaming (RX-Streaming) modes can be selected, whereby buffers are used in ping-pong for servicing a single direction of data flow. The AES-128 engine can be governed to perform network-layer security processing and supports complete security suites such as CTR, CBC-MAC and CCM*.

Transceiver can be controlled through a 4-wire SPI, interrupt and $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pins.

2.2 Operating Modes

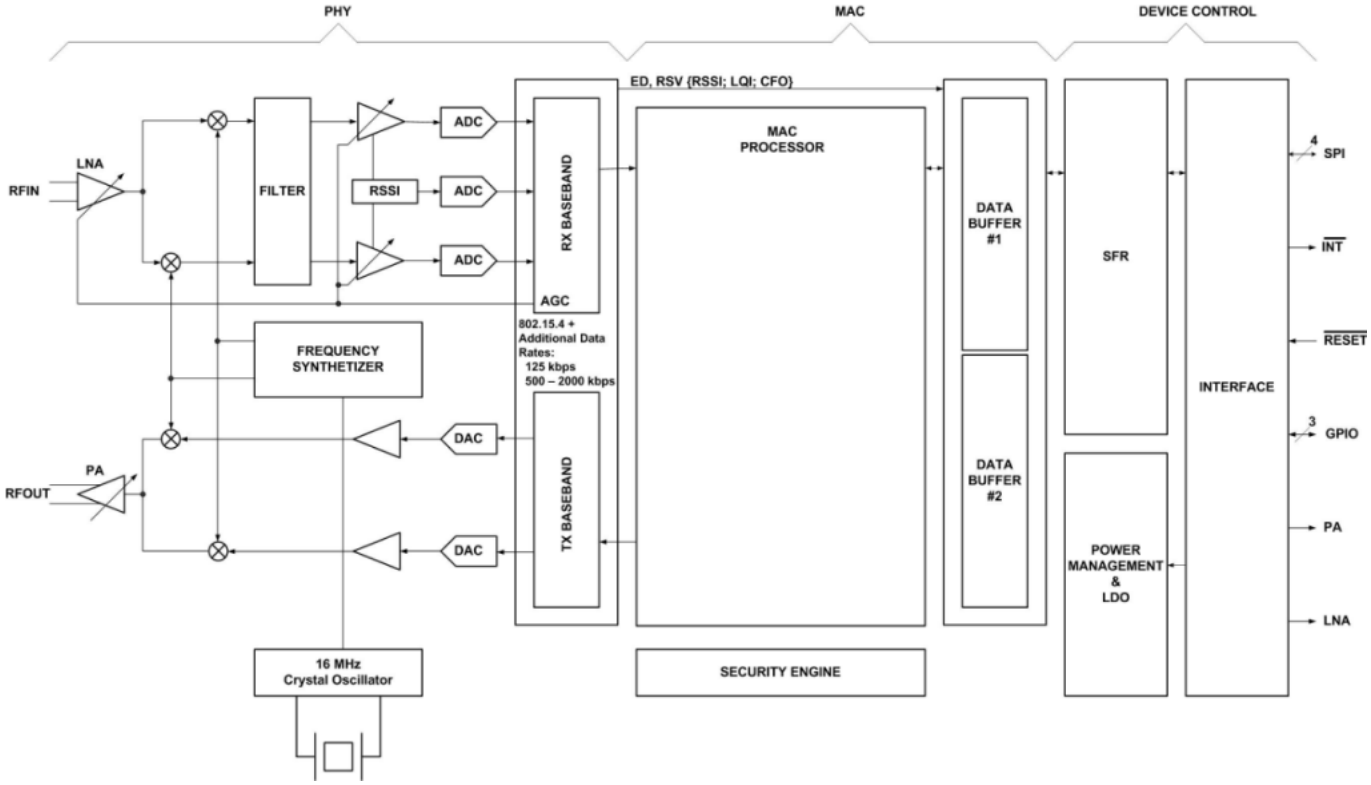
Table 2-1 summarizes the operating modes of MRF24XA.

TABLE 2-1: MRF24XA POWER MODES

Operating Mode	Internal Functional Blocks					
	1.2V LDO	Crystal Oscillator	Synthesizer	RX Front End	RX Baseband	TX Chain
Deep Sleep	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Sleep	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
RFOFF Crystal ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
RFOFF Synthesizer ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF
RX Listen Power-Save	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF
RX Listen	ON	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF
TX	ON	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON

2.3 Block Diagram

FIGURE 2-1: MRF24XA ARCHITECTURE BLOCK DIAGRAM



2.4 Pin Descriptions

TABLE 2-2: MRF24XA PIN DESCRIPTIONS

Pin	Symbol	Type	Description
1	AVDD	Power	1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)
2	RFOUTP	AO	Differential RF Output (+)
3	RFOUTN	AO	Differential RF Output (–)
4	AVDD	Power	1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)(1)
5	RFINP	AI	Differential RF Input (+)
6	AVSS	Ground	Ground
7	RFINN	AI	Differential RF Input (–)
8	AVDD	Power	1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)
9	AVSS	Power	Ground(1)
10	GPIO2	DIO	GPIO2
11	GPIO1	DIO	GPIO1
12	GPIO0	DIO	GPIO0
13	$\overline{INT}$	DO	Interrupt Output, active low
14	$\overline{CS}$	DI	SPI Chip Select Pin, active low
15	SCK	DI	SPI serial clock
16	SDI	DI	SPI serial data Input
17	SDO	DO	SPI serial data Output
18	$\overline{RESET}$	DI	Reset Input, active low
19	DVSS	Ground	Digital ground
20	PA	DO	External PA enable Output
21	LNA	DO	External LNA enable Output
22	DVDD	Power	Digital 1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)
23	DVDDIO	Power	Digital 1.5V – 3.6V supply for the IO blocks, normally connected to VREGIN (pin 30)
24	OSC1	AI	Crystal oscillator Pin 1, External Clock Input
25	OSC2	AO	Crystal oscillator Pin 2
26	AVSS	Ground	Ground
27	AVDD	Power	1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)
28	RBIAS	AO	External resistor reference pin
29	VREGOUT	Power	1.2V regulated Output
30	VREGIN	Power	1.5V – 3.6V regulator Input
31	AVSS	Ground	Ground
32	AVDD	Power	1.2V supply, normally connected to VREGOUT (pin 29)

Legend: A = Analog, D = Digital, I = Input, O = Output

Note 1: In case of running out of PCB space, pin 4 and pin 9 can be left unconnected.

2.4.1 POWER AND GROUND PINS

Recommended bypass capacitors are listed in Table 2-3. VDD pins 29 and 30 are power pins which require different bypass capacitors to ensure sufficient bypass decoupling and stability. Bypass capacitors must have low serial resistance. The 4.7 µF capacitors should be made of ceramic or high performance tantalum.

On PCB layout minimize trace length from the VDD pin to the bypass capacitors and connect capacitors to the pads as short as possible. PCB tracks must be wide enough to minimize voltage drop and serial inductance of the power line.

Analog and digital power lines must follow a star topology, where the common point is the bypass capacitor on pin 30.

TABLE 2-3: RECOMMENDED BYPASS CAPACITOR VALUES

VDD Pin	Symbol	Bypass Capacitor
1	AVDD	3.3 pF
4	AVDD	3.3 pF
8	AVDD	3.3 pF
22	DVDD	3.3 pF
23	DVDDIO	3.3 pF
27	AVDD	3.3 µF
29	VREGOUT	4.7 µF
30	VREGIN	10 nF + 4.7 µF
32	AVDD	3.3 pF

2.4.2 16 MHz MAIN OSCILLATOR PINS

The 16 MHz oscillator is connected to OSC1 and OSC2 pins as shown in Figure 2-2, which provides the reference frequency for the internal RF, MAC and BB circuitry. The crystal parameters are listed in Table 2-4.

To minimize parasitic effects on pins, the crystal must be put as close as possible to MRF24XA. It keeps the tracks short. Crystal must be surrounded with ground pour to minimize cross coupling effects. Crystal load capacitors must be placed close to the crystal.

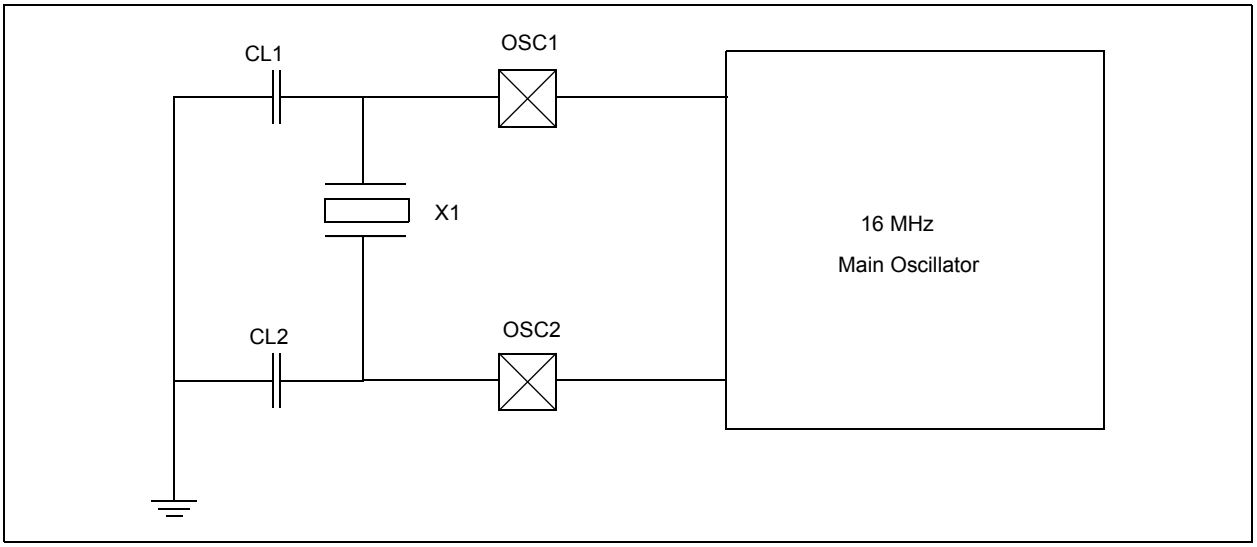
TABLE 2-4: 16 MHz CRYSTAL PARAMETERS(1)

Parameters	Value
Frequency	16 MHz
Frequency tolerance for 500, 250 and 125 kbps data rates (including manufacturing aging and temperature)	±60 ppm(1)
Frequency tolerance for 2 and 1 Mbps data rates (including manufacturing aging and temperature)	±40 ppm(2)
Mode	Fundamental
Load Capacitance	27 pF
ESR	80 Ohm max

Note 1: IEEE 802.15.4 defines ±40 ppm.

2: These values are for design guidance only.

FIGURE 2-2: 16 MHz MAIN OSCILLATOR CRYSTAL CIRCUIT



2.4.3 RESET ($\overline{\text{RESET}}$) PIN

An external hardware Reset can be performed by asserting the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin 18 low. By de-asserting the RESET pin, MRF24XA will start the internal calibration process. RDYIF interrupt is set when the device is ready to use. The $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin has an internal weak pull-up resistor.

2.4.4 INTERRUPT ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) PIN

The Interrupt ($\overline{\text{INT}}$) pin 13 provides an interrupt signal to the host MCU from MRF24XA. The signal is active low polarity. Interrupt sources must be enabled and unmasked before the $\overline{\text{INT}}$ pin is active.

Refer to **Section 3.2 "Interrupts"** for the functional description of interrupts.

2.4.5 GENERAL PURPOSE INPUT/ OUTPUT (GPIO) PINS

Three GPIO pins can be configured individually for control or monitoring purposes. Input or output selection is configured by the TRISGPIOx bits in the GPIO register (0x0D). GPIO data can be read or written through the GPIO bits of GPIO register. The GPIO interrupt polarity can be selected through GPIOxP bits in the STGPIO (0x0E) register.

GPIO lines in Input mode can be used in Schmitt Trigger Input mode. Schmitt Triggers can be enabled by STENGPIOx bits of STGPIO register. GPIOs can also be used to monitor the internal blocks. These monitoring functions can be selected by the GPIOMODE bits <3:0> of the PINCON (0x0C) register.

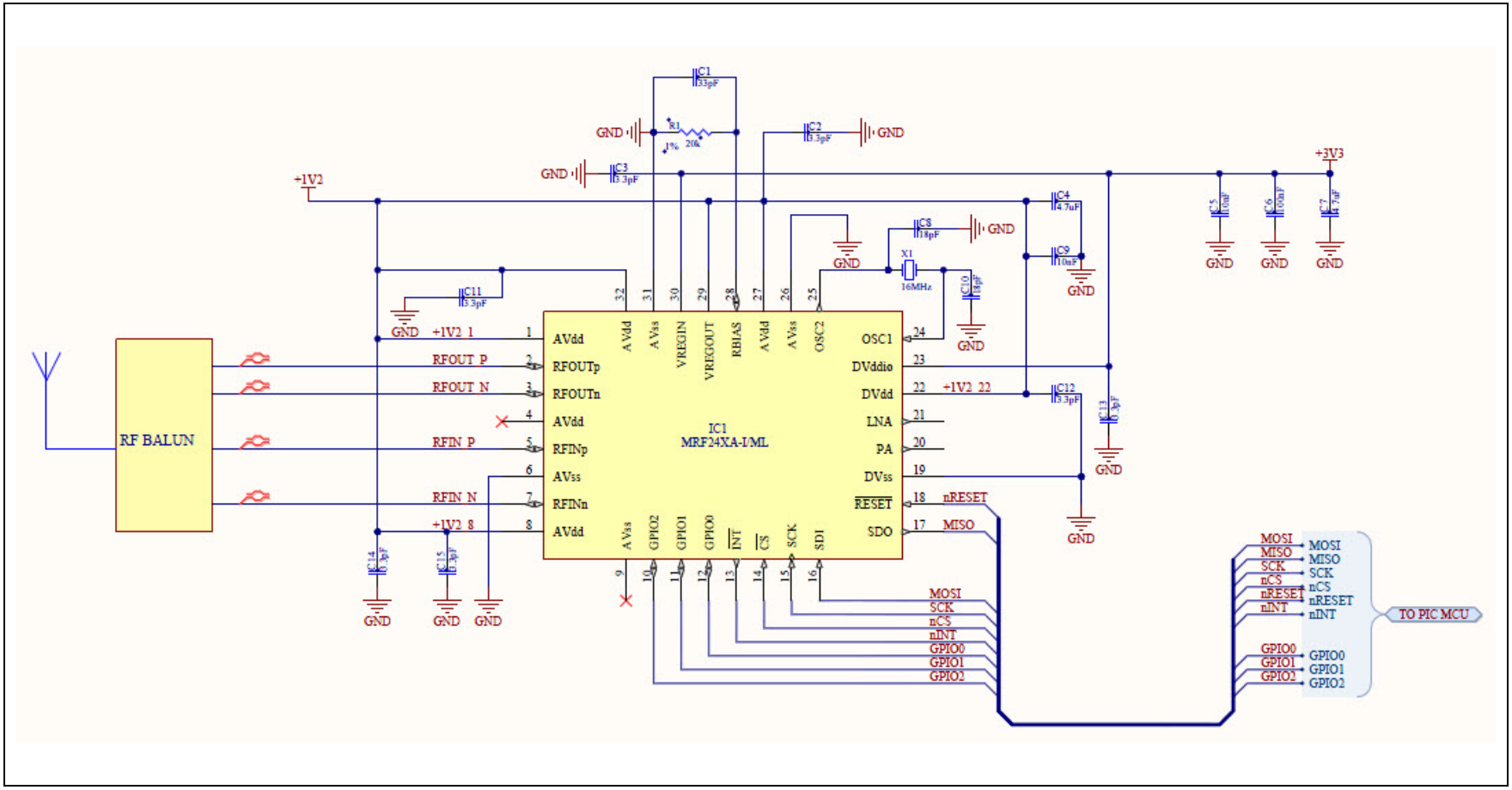
2.4.6 SERIAL PERIPHERAL INTERFACE (SPI) PORT PINS

MRF24XA communicates with a host MCU through a 4-wire SPI port as a slave device. MRF24XA supports SPI mode 0,0 which requires that SCK idles in a low state. The $\overline{\text{CS}}$ pin must be held low while communicating with MRF24XA. Figure 2-3 illustrates timing for a read and a write operation. Data is received by MRF24XA through the SDI pin and is clocked in on the rising edge of SCK. Data is sent by MRF24XA through the SDO pin and is clocked out on the falling edge of SCK. The SDO lines preserve its HiZ state in Deep Sleep mode.

2.5 Application Example

Figure 2-3 illustrates the schematic of a recommended application circuit for MRF24XA.

FIGURE 2-3: MRF24XA APPLICATION CIRCUIT



2.6 Memory Organization

Memory is functionally divided into Special Function Registers (SFR) and data buffers, as shown in Table 2-5.

The SFRs provide control, status and device configuration addressing for MRF24XA operations. Data buffers serve as temporary buffers for data transmission and reception. Memory is accessed through two addressing methods: Short (1 byte) and Long (2 bytes).

2.6.1 ADDRESS OVERVIEW

Two addressing modes in MRF24XA are:

- Short Address Mode: Requires one byte for address, and may be used to access the first 64 on-chip control registers.
- Long Address Mode: Requires two bytes for address, and may be used to access all on-chip registers and data buffers. These modes are illustrated in Figure 2-4.

TABLE 2-5: MRF24XA MEMORY MAP

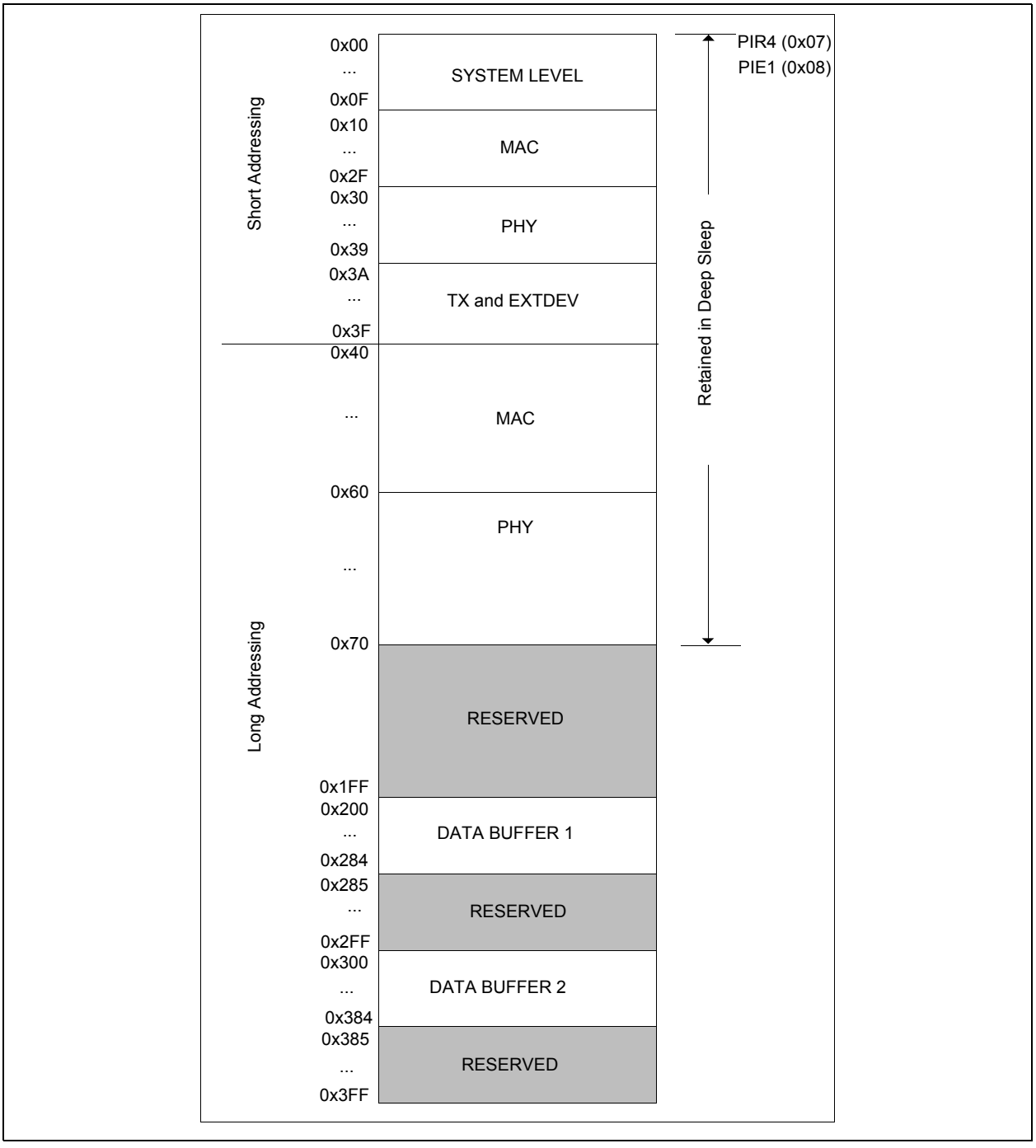


TABLE 2-6: SHORT ADDRESS REGISTER SUMMARY FOR MRF24XA

Architecture	Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
SYSTEM LEVEL	0x00	REGRST	r	r	REGRST<5:0>					
	0x01	FSMRST	r	r	r	FSMRST<4:0>				
	0x02	OPSTATUS	r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
	0x03	STATUS	INITDONESF	XTALSF	REGSF	CALST	XTALDIS	DSLEEP	IDLESF	POR
	0x04	PIR1	VREGIF	r	RDYIF	IDLEIF	r	CALSOIF	CALHAIF	r
	0x05	PIR2	TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
	0x06	PIR3	RXIF	RXDECIF	RXTAGIF	r	RXIDENTIF	RXFLTIF	RXOVFIF	STRMIF
	0x07	PIR4	TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
	0x08	PIE1	r	r	RDYIE	IDLEIE	r	CALSOIE	CALHAIE	r
	0x09	PIE2	TXIE	TXENCIE	TXMAIE	TXACKIE	TXCSMAIE	TXSZIE	TXOVFIE	FRMIE
	0x0A	PIE3	RXIE	RXDECIE	RXTAGIE	r	RXIDENTIE	RXFLTIE	RXOVFIE	STRMIE
	0x0B	PIE4	TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
	0x0C	PINCON	r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>			
	0x0D	GPIO	GPIOEN	TRISGPIO2	TRISGPIO1	TRISGPIO0	r	GPIO2	GPIO1	GPIO0
	0x0E	STGPIO	r	GPIO2P	GPIO1P	GPIO0P	r	STENGPIO2	STENGPIO1	STENGPIO0
	0x0F	PULLGPIO	r	PULLDIRGPIO2	PULLDIRGPIO1	PULLDIRGPIO0	r	PULLENGPIO2	PULLENGPIO1	PULLENGPIO0
MAC	0x10	MACCON1	TRXMODE<1:0>		ADDRSZ<2:0>			CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
	0x11	MACCON2	CH<3:0>				SECSUITE<3:0>			
	0x12	TXCON	TXST	DTSM	TXENC	TXBUFEMPTY	CSMAEN	DR<2:0>		
	0x13	RXACKWAIT	RXACKWAIT<7:0>							
	0x14	RETXCOUNT	RETXMCNT<3:0>				RETXCCNT<3:0>			
	0x15	RXCON1	RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RXVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
	0x16	RXCON2	RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
	0x17	TXACKTO	TXACKTO<7:0>							
	0x18	RXFILTER	PANCRDN	CRCREJ	CMDREJ	DATAREJ	UNIREJ	NOTMEREJ	BCREJ	NSTDREJ
	0x19	TMRCON	BOMCNT<2:0>			BASETM<4:0>				
	0x1A	CSMABE	MAXBE<3:0>				MINBE<3:0>			
	0x1B	BOUNIT	BOUNIT<7:0>							
	0x1C	STRMTOL	STRMTO<7:0>							
	0x1D	STRMTOH	STRMTO<15:8>							
	0x1E	OFFTM	OFFTM<7:0>							

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

TABLE 2-6: SHORT ADDRESS REGISTER SUMMARY FOR MRF24XA (CONTINUED)

Architecture	Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
	0x1F	ADDR1	ADDR<7:0>							
	0x20	ADDR2	ADDR<15:8>							
	0x21	ADDR3	ADDR<23:16>							
	0x22	ADDR4	ADDR<31:24>							
	0x23	ADDR5	ADDR<39:32>							
	0x24	ADDR6	ADDR<47:40>							
	0x25	ADDR7	ADDR<55:48>							
	0x26	ADDR8	ADDR<63:56>							
	0x27	SHADDRL	SHADDR<7:0>							
	0x28	SHADDRH	SHADDR<15:8>							
	0x29	PANIDL	PANID<7:0>							
	0x2A	PANIDH	PANID<15:8>							
	0x2B	SECHDRINDX	r	SECHDRINDX<6:0>						
	0x2C	SECPAYINDX	r	SECPAYINDX<6:0>						
	0x2D	SECENDINDX	r	SECENDINDX<6:0>						
	0x2E	MACDEBUG	BUF1TXPP	BUF2TXPP	BUF1RXPP	BUF2RXPP	TXRDBUF	RXWRBUF	BUSRDBUF	BUSWRBUF
PHY	0x2F	CCACON1	CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>					
	0x30	CCACON2	CCATHR<3:0>				CCALEN<1:0>		CCAMODE<1:0>	
	0x31	EDCON	r	r	EDMODE	EDST	EDLEN<3:0>			
	0x32	EDMEAN	EDMEAN<7:0>							
	0x33	EDPEAK	EDPEAK<7:0>							
	0x34	CFOCON	CFOTX<3:0>				CFORX<3:0>			
	0x35	CFOMEAS	CFOMEAS<7:0>							
	0x36	RATECON	DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
	0x37	POWSAVE	DESENS<3:0>				PSAVTHR<3:0>			
	0x38	BBCON	RNDMOD	AFCOVR	RXGAIN<1:0>		PRMBHLD	PRMBSZ<2:0>		
	0x39	IFGAP	r	r	r	IFGAP<4:0>				
TX AND EXTDEV	0x3A	TXPOW	CHIPBOOST<2:0>			TXPOW<4:0>				
	0x3B	TX2IDLE	r	r	r	TX2IDLE<4:0>				
	0x3C	TX2TXMA	r	r	r	TX2TXMA<4:0>				
	0x3D	EXTPA	r	EXTPA_P	PAEN	PA2TXMA<4:0>				
	0x3E	EXTLNA	r	EXTLNA_P	LNAEN	LNADLY<4:0>				
	0x3F	BATMON	r	r	BATMONPD	BATMON<4:0>				

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

TABLE 2-7: LONG ADDRESS REGISTER SUMMARY FOR MRF24XA

	Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
MAC	0x40	SECKEY1	SECKEY<7:0>							
	0x41	SECKEY2	SECKEY<15:8>							
	0x42	SECKEY3	SECKEY<23:16>							
	0x43	SECKEY4	SECKEY<31:24>							
	0x44	SECKEY5	SECKEY<39:32>							
	0x45	SECKEY6	SECKEY<47:40>							
	0x46	SECKEY7	SECKEY<55:48>							
	0x47	SECKEY8	SECKEY<63:56>							
	0x48	SECKEY9	SECKEY<71:64>							
	0x49	SECKEY10	SECKEY<79:72>							
	0x4A	SECKEY11	SECKEY<87:80>							
	0x4B	SECKEY12	SECKEY<95:88>							
	0x4C	SECKEY13	SECKEY<103:96>							
	0x4D	SECKEY14	SECKEY111:104>							
	0x4E	SECKEY15	SECKEY<119:112>							
	0x4F	SECKEY16	SECKEY<127:120>							
	0x50	SECNONCE1	SECNONCE<7:0>							
	0x51	SECNONCE2	SECNONCE<15:8>							
	0x52	SECNONCE3	SECNONCE<23:16>							
	0x53	SECNONCE4	SECNONCE<31:24>							
	0x54	SECNONCE5	SECNONCE<39:32>							
	0x55	SECNONCE6	SECNONCE<47:40>							
	0x56	SECNONCE7	SECNONCE<55:48>							
	0x57	SECNONCE8	SECNONCE<63:56>							
	0x58	SECNONCE9	SECNONCE<71:64>							
	0x59	SECNONCE10	SECNONCE<79:72>							
	0x5A	SECNONCE11	SECNONCE<87:80>							
	0x5B	SECNONCE12	SECNONCE<95:88>							
	0x5C	SECNONCE13	SECNONCE<103:96>							
	0x5D	SECENCFLAG	SECENCFLAG<7:0>							
	0x5E	SECAUTHFLAG	SECAUTHFLAG<7:0>							
	0x5F	r								
PHY	0x60	SFD1	SFD1<7:0>							
	0x61	SFD2	SFD2<7:0>							
	0x62	SFD3	SFD3<7:0>							
	0x63	SFD4	SFD4<7:0>							
	0x64	SFD5	SFD5<7:0>							
	0x65	SFD6	SFD6<7:0>							
	0x66	SFD7	SFD7<7:0>							
	0x67	r								
	0x68	r								
	0x69	r								
	0x6A	r								
	0x6B	r								
	0x6C	r								
	0x6D	r								
	0x6E	SFDTO	SFDTIMEOUT<7:0>							
	0x7F	r								

2.6.2 ADDRESS

When Short Addressing mode is used, the address field is 6 bits wide to reduce framing overhead while accessing the mostly active registers (0x00..0x3F). In Long Addressing mode the address field is 10 bits wide (0x00..0x3FF) thus all the address is available for SPI operation.

2.6.3 AUTOMATIC TX START FEATURE

When a write to TRXBUF is done using Long Addressing mode, and the 3rd bit of Byte 2 is set, the TXST bit will automatically be set after the $\overline{CS}$ pin is released, and MRF24XA sends the packet.

2.6.4 AUTOMATIC BUFFER FLUSH FEATURE

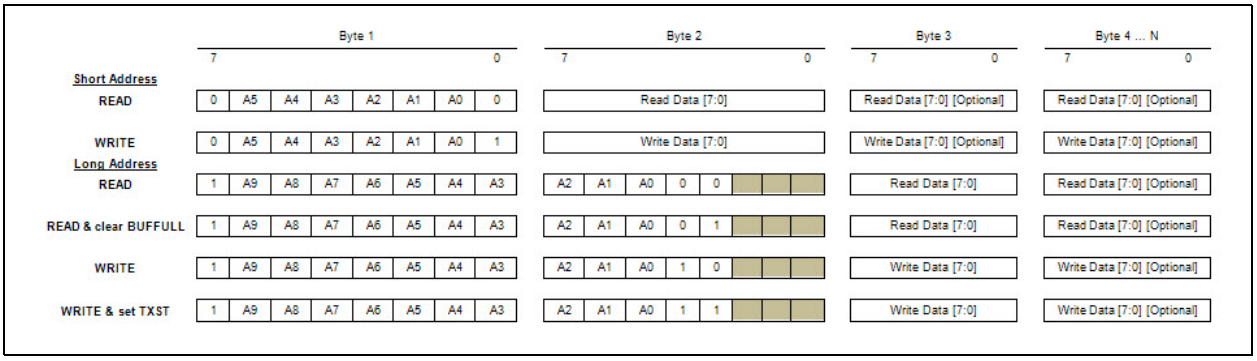
When a read from TRXBUF is done using Long Addressing mode, and the 3rd bit of Byte 2 is set, the BUFFULL bit will automatically be cleared after the $\overline{CS}$ pin is negated.

2.6.5 ADDRESS AUTO-INCREMENT FEATURE

After the starting address has been loaded, the first byte of data is read from or written to this address. The second byte (assuming the $\overline{CS}$ pin is not negated between bytes) is read from or written to the starting address plus one, and so on.

If the memory map end is reached, the effective address will roll over to the beginning of the memory map. It is the sole responsibility of the software to handle this situation correctly. Figure 2-4 illustrates the available address modes.

FIGURE 2-4: SPI FRAMING TYPES



2.7 Register Details

REGISTER 2-1: OPSTATUS (OPERATION STATUS)[3]

R-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0
r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-3 **MACOP<3:0>:** MAC Operation Register bits[1, 2]

Provides status information on the current MAC state machine state. Encoding on MACOP<3:1>:
111 = Transmitting Acknowledge (TXACK)
110 = Receiving a packet (RXBUSY)
101 = Receiver listening to the channel waiting for packet (RX)
100 = Receiving (or waiting for) Acknowledge (RXACK)
011 = Transmitting a packet (TX)
010 = Performing Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)
001 = Back-off before repeated CCA (BO)
000 = MAC does not perform any operation (IDLE)

bit 2-0 **RFOP<2:0>:** Radio Operation Register bits

Provides status information on the current radio state. Encoding on RFOP<2:0>:
111 = TX with external PA is turned on (TX+PA)
110 = RX with external LNA is turned on (RX+LNA)
101 = Synthesizer and external PA or LNA is turned on (SYNTH+PA/LNA)
100 = Radio is calibrating if CALST has been set by the host MCU, otherwise device malfunction (CAL/MAL)
011 = Analog transmit chain is activated (TX)
010 = Analog receiver chain is active (RX). Digital may be partially shut off
001 = Synthesizer is steady or ramping up or channel change is issued (SYNTH)
000 = Only the crystal oscillator is ON (OFF), (except when XTALSF = 1)

Note 1: GPIO<2:0> can be dedicated to output MACOP<3:1> or RFOP<2:0>. Refer to the PINCON register, which specifies the pin configuration.

2: MACOP<0> is connected to the RXBUFFUL register bit. It cannot be output over GPIO's.

3: The OPSTATUS register is sent on the SDO pin during the first byte of the SPI operation.

REGISTER 2-2: STATUS (DEVICE STATUS)

R/HS	R/HS	R/HS	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/HS	R/W/HC
INITDONESF	XTALSF	REGSF	CALST	DSLEEP	XTALDIS	IDLESF	POR
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **INITDONESF:** Device Initialization Status Flag bit

Indicates that the ready state has been reached since the LDO is on, (that is, since VREGIF = 1). INITDONESF is asserted when RDYIF is set for the first time after VREGIF. This bit is cleared only on reset (POR, DEVFRST and PINRST).

bit 6 **XTALSF:** Crystal Status Flag bit

XTALSF = 1, indicates that 16 MHz system clock (from the crystal oscillator) is active. This bit is cleared either when XTALDIS is set or reset (POR, DEVFRST, PINRST).

XTALSF = 0, indicates that the crystal oscillator is either powered off (XTALDIS = 1) or is ramping up or has not stabilized yet, and the system clock is inactive.

bit 5 **REGSF:** Configuration Registers Status Flag bit

REGSF = 1 indicates that all the 1.2V register content is valid. Either because it holds the default value after reset, and the retention memory does not hold any data to restore, or because the register configurations have already been restored from the retention memory.

REGSF = 0 indicates that registers from 0x08-0x6E are not valid because wake-up procedure from Deep Sleep mode have not finished the register restore operation yet. This bit is cleared only on Reset (POR, DEVFRST, PINRST).

bit 4 **CALST:** Calibration Start bit

MCU sets this bit to start calibration procedure after a CALSOIF or CALHAIF interrupt occurred. MCU may not clear it to abort calibration. CALST is cleared by the device when the calibration has completed (CALHAIF = 0 indicates success, CALHAIF = 1 indicates failure). Issuing CALST operation without CALHAIF/CALSOIF will terminate without any effect on the device.

bit 3 **DSLEEP:** Deep-Sleep bit

MCU sets this bit to send the device into deep sleep state. Following DSLEEP = 1, the SPI access to the SFR is shut off, and the SPI pins must be quite, unless the host MCU wants to wake-up the device. When DSLEEP is set, the device transitions through register backup (taking cca. 16 µs) before LDO is powered off.

bit 2 **XTALDIS:** Crystal Disable bit

MCU sets this bit to send the device into XTAL OFF state (reachable from ready state). XTALSF gets cleared automatically. The SPI register access can be performed when crystal is not working.

bit 1 **IDLESF:** Idle Status Flag bit

Indicates device idle state when all of the following bits are de-asserted:

- TXBUFEMPTY = 0 since it is transmitted (TXST)
- Network layer security finished (TXENC)
- Crypto engine finished (RXDEC)
- Energy detect operation finished (EDST)
- Clear Channel Assessment finished (CCAST)

bit 0 **POR:** Power-on-Reset Flag bit

The 3.3V POR flag status. Set by the device on 3.3V power-up only (e.g., when battery is changed). Cleared by host MCU to be able to sense a Brown-out Reset (BOR). Settable for software testing.

REGISTER 2-3: PIR1 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 1)

R/HS-1	R-0	R/HS-0	R/W/HC-0	R-0	R/W/HS-0	R/W/HS-0	R-0
VREGIF	r	RDYIF	IDLEIF	r	CALSOIF	CALHAIF	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **VREGIF:** Voltage Regulator On Interrupt Flag bit

This is a non-persistent bit. The register bit is initialized to one on 1.2V reset except for PINRESET and cleared only when PIR1 is read. Note that the corresponding IE bit is not implemented[(1)].

bit 6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **RDYIF:** Ready State Interrupt Flag bit

Set each time when ready state is reached:

- when calibration ended (CALST = 0)
- when initialization ended (INITDONESF = 1)
- when crystal is ramped up (XTALSF = 1)

This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 4 **IDLEIF:** Idle State Interrupt Flag bit

Set each time when IDLESF is set and only if it was not triggered by the MCU. Not changed when MCU aborts an action by clearing either of TXST, TXENC, RXDEC or EDST bits. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **CALSOIF:** Calibration Soft Interrupt Flag bit

CALSOIF = 1 indicates that calibration is probably needed (CALST) although the radio is still functional. It also warns of a possible degradation in signal quality and consumption, and a risk of CALHAIF interrupt. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 1 **CALHAIF:** Calibration Hard Interrupt Flag bit

CALHAIF = 1 indicates that immediate calibration (CALST) is mandatory, otherwise the radio is not functional. The device enters into malfunction state. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

Note 1: Generated non-maskable interrupt is gated off until the 1.2V reset is released.

REGISTER 2-4: PIR2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 2)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXIF:** Transmission Done Interrupt Flag bit

The current TX operation (TXST) has successfully completed. This event is not changed when a hardware generated ACK packet has completed transmission or when a packet has been repeated. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **TXENCIF:** Transmit Encryption Interrupt Flag bit

The TX packet was successfully encrypted and/or complemented with a Message Integrity Code (MIC). Set by the device after TXENC = 1, when TXENC is cleared. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **TXMAIF:** Transmitter Medium Access Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the medium is accessed, that is, when the first sample in the preamble is transmitted on air. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **TXACKIF:** Transmission Unacknowledged Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Acknowledge is not received after the configured maximum number of transmission retries RETXMCNT<3:0>, provided that the frame control field of the transmitted frame indicates AckReq = 1. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 3 **TXCSMAIF:** Transmitter CSMA Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when CSMA-CA finds the channel is busy for BOMCNT<2:0> number of times, provided that CSMAEN = 1 is configured. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **TXSZIF:** Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag bit

Following TXST is set the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **TXOVFIF:** Transmitter Overflow Interrupt Flag bit

The Host Controller attempted to write a TX buffer that was not empty (TXBUFEMPTY = 0).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **FRMIF:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should or it is corrupted in demodulation).

REGISTER 2-5: PIR3 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 3)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
RXIF	RXDECIF	RXTAGIF	r	RXIDENTIF	RXFLTIF	RXOVFIF	STRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXIF:** Received Successful Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a frame has passed packet filtering and has been accepted (refer to Register 2-23). This interrupt flag is only set once for a packet and is not set when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission, (that is, sequence number matches with the previously received frame).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXDECIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Passed Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished without error.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **RXTAGIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished with error.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **RXIDENTIF:** Received Packet Identical Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission, (that is, sequence number, source address matches with the previously received frame). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **RXFLTIF:** Received Packet Filtered Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a packet was received, but rejected by one or more RX Filters (refer to Register 2-23).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **RXOVFIF:** Receiver Overflow Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate that a packet was received, but all RX buffers were full. Consequently the packet was not received, but was discarded instead(1).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **STRMIF:** Receive Stream Time-out Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate that the duration specified in STRMTO has elapsed since the last received packet while in RX-Streaming mode, and the MAC clears the stored sequence number.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

Note 1: In Packet mode, a single buffer is used for received frames, whereas in RX-Streaming mode both buffers are used for reception.

REGISTER 2-6: PIR4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 4)(1)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXSFDIF:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the last sample of the SFD field has been sent on the air.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read

bit 6 **RXSFDIF:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the SFD field of the received frame is detected.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read. Non-persistent. Cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **ERRORIF:** General Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device, when malfunction state is reached.

bit 4 **WARNIF:** Warning Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when one of the following occurred:

- Battery voltage has dropped below the threshold by BATMON<4:0> at 0x3F
- Indicating that resistor is missing or not connected well

bit 3 **EDCCAIF:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Energy-detect or CCA measurement is complete (following that the host MCU has set the EDST/CCAST bit to start the measurement and the device is clearing it in on completion).

Non-persistent. Cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **GPIO2IF:** GPIO2 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 1 **GPIO1IF:** GPIO1 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 0 **GPIO0IF:** GPIO0 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

Note 1: CFOMEAS<7:0> indication becomes valid on SFD found.

REGISTER 2-7: PIE1 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 1)

R-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0
r	RDYIE	IDLEIE	r	CALSOIE	CALHAIE	r
bit 7						bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **RDYIE:** Ready Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RDYIF interrupt bit.

bit 4 **IDLEIE:** Idle Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the IDLEIF interrupt bit.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **CALSOIE:** Calibration Soft Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the CALSOIF interrupt bit.

bit 1 **CALHAIE:** Calibration Hard Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the CALHAIF interrupt bit.

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 2-8: PIE2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 2)

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TXIE	TXENCIE	TXMAIE	TXACKIE	TXCSMAIE	TXSZIE	TXOVFIE	FRMIE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **TXIE:** Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXIF interrupt bit.

bit 6 **TXENCIE:** Transmit Encryption and Authentication Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXENCIF interrupt bit.

bit 5 **TXMAIE:** Transmitter Medium Access Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXMAIF interrupt bit.

bit 4 **TXACKIE:** Transmission Unacknowledged Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXACKIF interrupt bit.

bit 3 **TXCSMAIE:** Transmitter CSMA Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXCSMAIF interrupt bit.

bit 2 **TXSZIE:** Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXSZIF interrupt bit.

bit 1 **TXOVFIE:** Transmitter Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXOVFIF interrupt bit.

bit 0 **FRMIE:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the FRMIF interrupt bit.

REGISTER 2-9: PIE3 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 3)

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
RXIE	RXDECIE	RXTAGIE	r	RXIDENTIE	RXFLTIE	RXOVFIE	STRMIE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **RXIE:** Received Successful Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXIF interrupt bit.

bit 6 **RXDECIE:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Passed Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXDECIF interrupt bit.

bit 5 **RXTAGIE:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXTAGIF interrupt bit.

bit 4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **RXIDENTIE:** Received Packet Identical Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXIDENTIF interrupt bit.

bit 2 **RXFLTIE:** Received Packet Filtered Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXFLTIF interrupt bit.

bit 1 **RXOVFIE:** Receiver Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXOVFIF interrupt bit.

bit 0 **STRMIE:** Receive Stream Time-out Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the STRMIF interrupt bit.

REGISTER 2-10: PIE4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 4)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **TXSFDIE:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXSFDIF interrupt bit.

bit 6 **RXSFDIE:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXSFDIF Interrupt Enable.

bit 5 **ERRORIE:** General Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the ERRORIF interrupt bit.

bit 4 **WARNIE:** Warning Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the WARNIF interrupt bit.

bit 3 **EDCCAIE:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the EDCCAIF interrupt bit.

bit 2 **GPIO2IE:** GPIO2 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO2IF interrupt bit.

bit 1 **GPIO1IE:** GPIO1 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO1IF interrupt bit.

bit 0 **GPIO0IE:** GPIO0 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO0IF interrupt bit.

REGISTER 2-11: PINCON (PIN CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-1	R-0	R-1	R/W-0000
r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **GIE:** General Interrupt Enable bit
This bit enables to output IRQIF on $\overline{INT}$ pin. Note that the polarity of $\overline{INT}$ pin is active low.

bit 5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4 **IRQIF:** Interrupt Request Pending bit
This bit is the OR relationship of the interrupt flags that are enabled.

bit 3-0 **GPIOMODE <3:0>:** GPIO Mode Field bits
This field allows redefining the functionality of the GPIO pins Encoding:

11xx = Reserved

1011 = GPIO pins are used for Receive streaming (RXSTREAM). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {RXWRBUF, BUSRDBUF, RXBUFFUL}

1010 = GPIO pins are used for Transmit streaming (TXSTREAM). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {TXRDBUF, BUSWRBUF, TXBUFEMPTY}

1001 = Reserved

1000 = Reserved

0111 = Reserved

0110 = Reserved

0101 = Intended for supporting Precise Network Time Synchronization (TIMESYN). GPIO<0> is used to output TX, while GPIO<1> to output RX SFD indication pulses. GPIO<2> can be used as in "NORMAL" operation mode.

0100 = GPIO pins are used for Radio monitoring (RFMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output RFOP<2:0>.

0011 = GPIO pins are used for MAC monitoring (MACMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output MACOP<3:1>.

0010 = GPIO pins are used for RXFSM monitoring (RXFSMMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output receiver state-machine.

- 000 = Preamble search
- 001 = Hi-rate SFD search
- 010 = Mid-rate SFD search
- 011 = Low-rate SFD search
- 100 = Legacy length field processing
- 101 = Payload processing

0001 = GPIO pins are used for AGC monitoring (AGCMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {AGCHOLD, GAIN<1:0>} where AGCHOLD is an internal flag set when a preamble is detected by a receiver, and cleared when the AGC is set free after the end of the frame.

0000 = GPIO pins are used as General Purpose I/O's by the host MCU (NORMAL)

REGISTER 2-12: GPIO (GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GPIOEN	TRISGPIO2	TRISGPIO1	TRISGPIO0	r	GPIO2	GPIO1	GPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **GPIOEN:** GPIO Enable bit
This bit enables the GPIO's control, only if GPIOMODE is configured into Normal mode.
The other GPIOMODE configuration automatically controls GPIO pins.

bit 6 **TRISGPIO2:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 2 Pin bit
If set, the pin is configured into Input mode. Value can be read from GPIO2 bit.
If cleared, the pin is configured into Output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO2 bit.

bit 5 **TRISGPIO1:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 1 Pin bit
If set, the pin is configured into Input mode. Value can be read from GPIO1 bit.
If cleared, the pin is configured into Output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO1 bit.

bit 4 **TRISGPIO0:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 0 Pin bit
If set, the pin is configured into Input mode. Value can be read from GPIO0 bit.
If cleared, the pin is configured into Output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO0 bit.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **GPIO2:** GPIO 2 Value bit
This bit represents the value on the GPIO 2 pin.

bit 1 **GPIO1:** GPIO 1 Value bit
This bit represents the value on the GPIO 1 pin.

bit 0 **GPIO0:** GPIO 0 Value bit
This bit represents the value on the GPIO 0 pin.

REGISTER 2-13: STGPIO (SCHMITT TRIGGER GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
r	GPIO2P	GPIO1P	GPIO0P	r	STENGPIO2	STENGPIO1	STENGPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **GPIO2P:** GPIO 2 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO2IF polarity when configured into Input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 5 **GPIO1P:** GPIO 1 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO1IF polarity when configured into Input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 4 **GPIO0P:** GPIO 0 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO0IF polarity when configured into Input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **STENGPIO2:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 2 bit

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 2 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

bit 1 **STENGPIO1:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 1 bit

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 1 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

bit 0 **STENGPIO0:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 0 bit

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 0 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

REGISTER 2-14: PULLGPIO (PULL CONTROL GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
r	PULLDIR GPIO2	PULLDIR GPIO1	PULLDIR GPIO0	r	PULLEN GPIO2	PULLEN GPIO1	PULLEN GPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **PULLDIRGPIO2:** Pull Direction on GPIO 2 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 2 pin.

1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 5 **PULLDIRGPIO1:** Pull Direction on GPIO 1 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 1 pin.

1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 4 **PULLDIRGPIO0:** Pull Direction on GPIO 0 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 0 pin.

1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **PULLENGPIO2:** Pull enable on GPIO 2 bit

This bit enables the weak-pull circuit in GPIO 2 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.

1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

bit 1 **PULLENGPIO1:** Pull enable on GPIO 1 bit

This bit enables the weak-pull circuit in GPIO 1 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.

1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

bit 0 **PULLENGPIO0:** Pull enable on GPIO 0 bit

This bit enables the weak-pull circuit in GPIO 0 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.

1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

REGISTER 2-15: MACCON1 (MAC CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W-00	R/W-001	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
TRXMODE<1:0>	ADDRSZ<2:0>	CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **TRXMODE<1:0>:** TX/RX Mode Select Field bits

11 = Reserved
10 = TX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet transmission. When issuing TRXMODE = 10, RXEN is cleared. SPI addresses 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. Access to 0x37F through 0x383 has non-defined effect.
01 = RX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet reception. When issuing TRX MODE = 01, TXST and TXENC/RXDEC bits are cleared and RXEN is set. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. In this mode, Proprietary mode packets other than streaming type are automatically discarded. Access to 0x200 through 0x283 has non-defined effect.
00 = Packet mode. In this mode, Buffer 1 is used as a Transmit while Buffer 2 as a Receive packet buffer. SPI addresses from 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 2. TRXMODE = 00 is mandatory when FRMFMT = 0.

bit 5-3 **ADDRSZ<2:0>:** Source/Destination Address Size Field bits(1, 2)

The size of the Source and Destination addresses for Proprietary packet. Note that this field has no effect on the processing IEEE 802.15.4 frames.

111 = 8 octets
110 = 7 octets
101 = 6 octets
100 = 5 octets
011 = 4 octets
010 = 3 octets
001 = 2 octets
000 = 1 octet

bit 2 **CRCSZ:** CRC Size bit

This bit indicates the size of the CRC field in each packet

1 = 2 octets
0 = 0 octet

bit 1 **FRMFMT:** MAC Frame Format bit adopted by the network(3)

This bit determines the frame format used in the network.

1 = Proprietary
0 = IEEE 802.15.4 standard compliant.

Note 1: Zero-length address occurs when the corresponding DAddrPrsnt/SAddrPrsnt bits of the packet frame control field are set to '0'.

2: ADDRSZ field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

3: FRMFMT field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set. In Debug mode, this register bit is used to determine the frame format for both TX/RX frame in the packet buffers.

REGISTER 2-15: MACCON1 (MAC CONTROL 1 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 0 **SECFLAGOVR:** Security Flag Override bit

The user can override security flags used in the CCM-CTR, CBC-MAC and CCM operation, otherwise the device will use the standard (2003/2006) definition.

Note 1: Zero-length address occurs when the corresponding DAddrPrsnt/SAddrPrsnt bits of the packet frame control field are set to '0'.

2: ADDRSZ field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

3: FRMFMT field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set. In Debug mode, this register bit is used to determine the frame format for both TX/RX frame in the packet buffers.

REGISTER 2-16: MACCON2 (MAC CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/W-0000	R/W/HS-0000
CHANNEL<3:0>	SECSUITE<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **CHANNEL<3:0>:** TX/RX operating channel bits

These register bits are used as the current operating channel for TX/RX operation(1).

0x0 = Channel 11
0x1 = Channel 12
•
•
•
0xF = Channel 26

bit 3-0 **SECSUITE<3:0>:** Security suite bits(2)

1111 = AES-CBC-MAC-32 (Authentication with a 32-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
1110 = AES-CBC-MAC-64 (Authentication with a 64-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
1101 = AES-CBC-MAC-128 (Authentication with a 128-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
1100 = Reserved
1011 = Reserved
1010 = Reserved
1001 = AES-CTR (Encryption/Decryption, but no Authentication)
1000 = AES-ECB (Encryption only)
0111 = AES-ENC-MIC-128 (Authentication with a 128-bit MAC and Encryption/Decryption)
0110 = AES-ENC-MIC-64 (Authentication with a 64-bit MAC and Encryption/Decryption)
0101 = AES-ENC-MIC-32 (Authentication with a 32-bit MAC and Encryption/Decryption)
0100 = AES-ENC (Encryption/Decryption, but no Authentication)
0011 = AES-MIC-128 (Authentication with a 128-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
0010 = AES-MIC-64 (Authentication with a 64-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
0001 = AES-MIC-32 (Authentication with a 32-bit MAC, but no Encryption/Decryption)
0000 = No security services enabled, or security is handled by upper protocol layers; ignore the setting of the SecEn bit (assume it is '0')

Note 1: This field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

2: In 15.4-2006 standard mode MAC-layer security processing, the register field is set automatically based on the SecLvl bits of the AuxSecHdr control field.

REGISTER 2-17: TXCON (TRANSMIT CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/HS/HC-1	R/W-1	R/W-011
TXST	DTSM	TXENC	TXBUFEMPTY	CSMAEN	DR<2:0>
bit 7					bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXST:** Transmit Start bit

1 = Starts the transmission of the next TX packet(1, 2)
0 = Termination of current TX operation, which may result in the transmission of an incomplete packet

Hardware Clear:

Once the packet has been successfully transmitted (including all attempted retransmissions, if any) this bit will be cleared by hardware and TXIF and IDLEIF are set.

If the packet transmission fails due to a CSMA failure, then this bit will be cleared, and TXCSMAIF is set.

If Acknowledge was requested (AckReq bit field in the transmitted frame is set) and not received after the configured number of retransmissions (TXRETMCNT), then TXST bit will be cleared, and a TXACKIF is set.

In TX-Streaming mode (TRXMODE), TXST can be set even when it is already set, resulting in a posted start. When the current TX operation completes, the posted start will start immediately afterwards. Clearing of the TXST bit clears both the current and the posted (pending) TX starts. TXOVFIF is set when TXST = 1, a posted start is present and a Host Controller write to the packet buffer occurs. Outside of TX-Streaming mode, writes to TXST when TXST is already set will be ignored.

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in these cases:

- When transmitting a packet in Packet mode or in TX-Streaming mode
- When waiting for an ACK packet after a transmission
- During the CSMA CA algorithm
- When transmitting a repeated frame

This field can be read at any time to determine if TX operation is in progress.

bit 6 **DTSM:** Do Not Touch Security Materials bit(2)

1 = Device will not change the security material configured by the host MCU
0 = Device will try to configure the security material related registers

The concerned registers are SECNONCE, SECHDRINDX, SECPAYINDX and SECENDINDX registers should be filled by the MCU.

bit 5 **TXENC:** TX Encryption

Setting this bit will start TX security processing (authentication and/or encryption) of the packet in the buffer that was last written to. TXENC is cleared and TXENCIF is set when the processing is complete. TXENC should be issued when NWK layer security needs to be processed. 802.15.4-2003/2006 MAC layer security operation is automatically performed by setting TXST bit. Note that this field should not be modified while TXST is set.

Note 1: Transmission may include automatic security processing, CRC appending, CSMA-CA channel access, Acknowledge reception and retransmissions depending on the register configuration and the frame control field of the frame to be transmitted.

2: DTSM has no relevance in reception, because the host can always reconfigure the security material before setting RXDEC.

REGISTER 2-17: TXCON (TRANSMIT CONTROL REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 4 **TXBUFEMPTY:** TX Buffer Empty bit

TXBUFEMPTY = 1 indicates, that Host MCU can safely start writing a new frame to the buffer without overwriting any content that is in use. Writing a single byte to the buffer will cause this bit to be cleared. TXBUFEMPTY = 0 does not prevent the host from writing further bytes to the buffer. TXBUFEMPTY is set by the device when transmission is complete.

1 = MCU can safely start writing a new frame to the buffer
0 = Buffer is full, or being written to

When TRXMODE = 00:

Packet mode is configured then TXBUFEMPTY is set at the same time as TXST is cleared and an interrupt is generated. Therefore, this bit provides no extra information.

When TRXMODE = 10:

TX-Streaming mode is configured then TXBUFEMPTY is set at the same time as one of the buffers becomes free, while TXST may be set. Therefore, TXBUFEMPTY is used by the host MCU to make sure that it can start loading the next frame to the buffers, without overwriting a packet being sent (TXOVFIF).

bit 3 **CSMAEN:** CSMA-CA Enable bit

This bit enables CSMA-CA algorithm before transmission.

1 = CSMA-CA enabled
0 = CSMA-CA disabled

bit 2-0 **DR<2:0>:** Transmit Data Rate Field bits

111 = Reserved
110 = 2 Mbps
101 = 1 Mbps
100 = 500 kbps
011 = 250 kbps
010 = 125 kbps
001 = Reserved
000 = Reserved

When transmitting an Auto-ACK frame with Adaptive Data Rate in response to a received frame, the data rate of the PHY is automatically determined by the AckDataRate field in the received frame, and not by this register field. In all other cases, this register field is used as the current PHY data rate when transmitting.

The data rate for all received frames is determined automatically by the PHY, regardless of this register field and the Adaptive Data Rate configuration. Refer to Register 2-43 for more information.

Note 1: Transmission may include automatic security processing, CRC appending, CSMA-CA channel access, Acknowledge reception and retransmissions depending on the register configuration and the frame control field of the frame to be transmitted.

2: DTSM has no relevance in reception, because the host can always reconfigure the security material before setting RXDEC.

REGISTER 2-18: RXACKWAIT (RX ACKNOWLEDGE WAIT REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W/HC-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXACKWAIT<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear		

bit 7-0 **RXACKWAIT<7:0>:** Auto Acknowledge Wait Field bits

This field indicates the number of Base time units (see **Section 4.1 "MAC Architecture"**) that the device should wait after receiving a packet with AckReq = 1, before transmitting the corresponding ACK packet. This field is only used when AUTOACKEN = 1.

REGISTER 2-19: RETXCON (RETRANSMISSION CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W-0011	R-0000
RETXMCNT<3:0>	RETXCCNT<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **RETXMCNT<3:0>:** Retransmission Max Count Field bits(1, 2)

The maximum number of retries allowed after a transmission failure.

1111 = 15 retries

•

•

•

0001 = 1 retry

0000 = Transmitter will not wait for ACK

bit 3-0 **RETXCCNT<3:0>:** Retransmission Current Count Field bits

This read-only field indicates the current retransmit attempt number. When RETXCCNT<3:0> = RETXMCNT<3:0> and the TX attempt fails, the transmission will be aborted, generating TXACKIF interrupt.

Note 1: This field is used during transmission, and should not be modified while TXST is set.

REGISTER 2-20: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable Field bit

This bit enables/disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is currently being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled
0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode

Note that the most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

Note that the clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when needed, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

bit 6 **NOPA:** No Parsing bit

This bit will disable packet parsing. Only CRC will be checked, if it is enabled. This feature is useful in Sniffer mode.

1 = Disable packet parsing
0 = Enable packet parsing

bit 5 **RXDEC:** RX Decryption bit

Setting this bit will start RX security processing (authentication and/or decryption) on the last received packet.

1 = RX security processing started/in process. RXDECIF or RXTAGIF is set.
0 = RX security processing inactive or complete

This bit will clear itself after RX decryption has completed.

bit 4 **RSVLQIEN:** Receive Status Vector LQI Enable bit

If bit is set, the measured Link Quality is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append LQI field
0 = Do not append LQI field

bit 3 **RSVRSSIEN:** Receive Status Vector RSSI Enable bit

If bit is set, the measured RSSI is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append RSSI field
0 = Do not append RSSI field

bit 2 **RSVCHDREN:** Receive Status Vector Channel/MAC Type/Data Rate Enable bit

If bit is set, Channel, MAC type and Data Rate configurations used with the received frame are appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the encoding specified for CH<3:0>, FRMFMT and DR<2:0> (concatenated in this order when most significant bit (MSb) is first).

1 = Append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields
0 = Do not append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

REGISTER 2-20: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 1 **RSVCFOEN:** Receive Status Vector CFO Enable bit

If bit is set, the estimated Carrier Frequency Offset of the received frame is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the same encoding as CFOMEAS register.

1 = Append CFO estimation
0 = Do not append estimated CFO

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 2-21: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **RXBUFFUL:** RX Buffer Full bit

Host MCU clears this bit to indicate that the RX packet has been processed. If this bit is not cleared before the next valid RX packet is detected (packet is not a duplicate, pass RX filter, and so on), then the device sets RXOVFIF and the buffer content is not modified, that is, RXBUFFUL = 1 locks write access by a new frame, meanwhile the host can both read and write to the buffer or perform security processing.

In TRXMODE = 00 (PACKET) mode:

1 = Receive buffer content is yet to be read by the host or processed, and cannot be overwritten by a new frame
0 = Receive buffer is free for receiving a new frame

In TRXMODE = 01 (RX-STREAMING) mode:

1 = Current buffer being read from the bus contains a valid RX Packet
0 = Current buffer being read from the bus is empty

bit 6 **IDENTREJ:** Reject Identical Packet bit

In Packet mode, if this bit is set and a received packet has the same Source address, Source PID and Sequence number as the last packet received RXIDENTIF is set and the packet is discarded.

This bit is used, when a packet is used, transmit an ACK, but the ACK is never received. The sender will then re-send the TX packet to us. In this case, we don't want to trigger RXIF for a second time for the same packet, so we ignore the second packet.

This is also used when we repeat a packet, and the next repeater then repeats the same packet back. We will receive this packet, but we should ignore it.

1 = Any packet received with the same Source Address, Source PID and Sequence number as the last packet successfully received will be discarded and RXIDENTIF is set.
0 = Duplicated packets are processed further same as non-duplicated packets.

bit 5 **ACKRXFP:** ACK RX Frame Pending bit

This read-only status bit reflects the value of the FrameCtrl (FramePend) bit in the last received 802.15.4 compatible ACK frame.

Note 1: ADPTCHEN field is used while receiving and transmitting a packet, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

2: ADPTDREN field is used while receiving and transmitting a packet, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

REGISTER 2-21: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 4 **ACKTXFP:** ACK TX Frame Pending bit

The value of this bit is transmitted in the FrameCtrl (FramePend) bit slot when the MAC sends out an ACK packet in 802.15.4 Compatibility mode.

bit 3 **AUTORPTEN:** Auto-Repeat Enable bit

If this bit is set, the MAC will automatically transmit a packet whenever a packet is received, and its Repeat bit is set.

1 = Auto-Repeat feature is enabled
0 = Auto-Repeat feature is disabled

bit 2 **AUTOACKEN:** Auto-Acknowledge Enable bit

If this bit is set, then the device will automatically transmit an ACK packet whenever a packet is received, and its AckReq bit is set.

1 = Automatic Acknowledge processing enabled
0 = Automatic Acknowledge processing disabled

bit 1 **ADPTCHEN:** Adaptive Channel Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC in Proprietary mode to set the transmitting channel for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the CH<3:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Channel feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Channel feature is disabled

This feature is also known as Channel Agility. Refer to **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"** for more information.

bit 0 **ADPTDREN:** Adaptive Data Rate Enable bit(2)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC in Proprietary mode to set the transmission data rate for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the DR<2:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is disabled

This feature is also known as Channel Agility. Refer to **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"** for more information.

Note 1: ADPTCHEN field is used while receiving and transmitting a packet, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

2: ADPTDREN field is used while receiving and transmitting a packet, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

REGISTER 2-22: TXACKTO (TX ACKNOWLEDGE TIME-OUT REGISTER)

R/W-10000000	
TXACKTO<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-0 **TXACKTO<7:0>:** TX Acknowledge Time-out Field bits(1)

The maximum time in basetime units that the device will wait for receiving an ACK packet.

0x00 = Wait 1 Base time (see **Section 4.1 "MAC Architecture"**) unit before retransmitting (implying that the device will continually retransmit **RETXMCNT<3:0>** times).

0x01 = Wait 1 Base time unit before retransmitting

•

•

•

0x7F = Wait 127 Base time units before retransmitting

Note 1: TXACKTO field is used during transmission, and it should not be modified while TXST is set.

REGISTER 2-23: RXFILTER (RX FILTER REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PANCRDN	CRCREJ	CMDREJ	DATAREJ	UNIREJ	NOTMEREJ	BCREJ	NSTDREJ
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown	
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **PANCRDN:** PAN Coordinator bit

Setting this bit will allow the node to accept DAMode = 00 type packets if it is a CMD or DATA frame.

1 = Disable rejection
0 = Reject all DATA and CMD packets when DAMode = 00

bit 6 **CRCREJ:** CRC Error Reject Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets that have an invalid CRC, provided that it is present (CRCSZ = 1). Clearing this bit allows the user to accept all packets that have an invalid CRC, provided that it is present (CRCSZ = 1), skipping any further filtering. When CRC is not present then this bit has no effect (CRCSZ = 0).

1 = Reject all packets having an invalid CRC
0 = Accept all packets having an invalid CRC without further filtering

bit 5 **CMDREJ:** Command Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl (Type) equal to Command.

1 = Reject all Command packets
0 = Disable Command Frame Rejection

bit 4 **DATAREJ:** Data Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl (Type) equal to Data.

1 = Reject all Data packets
0 = Disable Data Frame Rejection

bit 3 **UNIREJ:** Unicast Reject Enable bit(2)

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all unicast packets as in:

802.15.4 Mode: PAN Identifier matches with the PANID<15:0> or 0xFFFF, and Destination Address matches the address in the ADDR<63:0> or SHADDR<15:0> register, as selected by DAMode.

Proprietary Mode: Destination Address matches the address in ADDR<ADDRSZ<2:0>*8-1:0> register, provided that DAddrPrsnt frame control field is set(1).

1 = Reject all Unicast packets addressed to this node
0 = Disable Unicast Rejection

Note 1: In Proprietary mode (FRMFMT = 1), when CRCREJ = 1 is used to reject unicast frames not addressed to this node. NOTMEREJ = 1 will not reject these frames.

2: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by UNIREJ.

3: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by NOTMEREJ.

4: Proprietary frames in Proprietary mode are not affected by NSTDREJ.

REGISTER 2-23: RXFILTER (RX FILTER REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 2 **NOTMEREJ:** Not Me Unicast Reject Enable bit(3)

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all unicast packets as in:

802.15.4 Mode: Destination PAN Identifier does not match PANID<15:0> and is not 0xFFFF (broadcast) or Destination Address does not match the address in the ADDR<63:0> register or the SHADDR<15:0> register, as selected by DAMode.

Proprietary Mode: Destination Address matches the address in ADDR<ADDRSZ<2:0>*8-1:0> register, provided that DAddrPrsnt frame control field is set(1).

1 = Reject all Unicast packets NOT addressed to this node
0 = Disable Not Me Unicast Rejection Filtering

bit 1 **BCREJ:** Broadcast Rejection bit

802.15.4 Mode: Setting this bit allows the user to reject all Broadcast packets of type Data or Command. A Data or Command packet is broadcast when Short Destination Addressing is used (DAMode = 10) and Short Address is equal 0xFFFF.

Proprietary Mode: Setting this bit allows the user to reject all Broadcast packets of type Data or Command (or Streaming). A packet is broadcast when FrameCtrl[Broadcast] is set.

1 = Reject Broadcast Packets
0 = Disable Broadcast Rejection

bit 0 **NSTDREJ:** Non-Standard Frame Reject bit(4)

This bit allows the user to reject all 802.15.4 frames having 01 for the DAMode or SAMode fields or having the MSb (bit 2) in the Type field set (1) or having the MSb (bit 1) in the Frame Version field set to(1).

1 = Reject all Non-Standard 802.15.4 packets
0 = Disable Non-Standard Rejection

Note 1: In Proprietary mode (FRMFMT = 1), when CRCREJ = 1 is used to reject unicast frames not addressed to this node. NOTMEREJ = 1 will not reject these frames.

2: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by UNIREJ.

3: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by NOTMEREJ.

4: Proprietary frames in Proprietary mode are not affected by NSTDREJ.

REGISTER 2-24: TMRCON (TIMER CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W-100	R/W-00010
BOMCNT<2:0>	BASETM<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **BOMCNT<2:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Maximum Count bits

The maximum number of back-off attempts the CSMA-CA algorithm will attempt before declaring a channel access failure.

111 = Reserved
110 = Reserved
101 = 5 attempts
100 = 4 attempts
011 = 3 attempts
010 = 2 attempts
001 = 1 attempts
000 = 0 attempt

bit 4-0 **BASETM<4:0>:** Base time Field bits

The number of 1 µs clock cycles that a Base time unit represents in all register settings. Refer to **Section 4.1 "MAC Architecture"** for more information.

REGISTER 2-25: CSMABE (CSMA-CA BACK-OFF EXPONENT CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W-0101	R/W-0011
MAXBE<3:0>	MINBE<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **MAXBE<3:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Maximum Count Field bits

The maximum value of the Back-off exponent (BE), in the CSMA-CA algorithm. The back-off time is (2^{BE}-1) units.

1111 = Reserved
•
•
•
1001 = Reserved
1000 2^8-1 = 255 maximum units of back-off time
•
•
•
0000 2^0-1 = No back-off time

bit 3-0 **MINBE<3:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Minimum Count bits

The minimum value of the back-off exponent (BE), in the CSMA-CA algorithm. The back-off time is (2^{BE}-1) units.

1111 = Reserved
•
•
•
1001 = Reserved
1000 2^8-1 = 255 maximum units of back-off time
•
•
•
0000 2^0-1 = No back-off time

REGISTER 2-26: BOUNIT (BACK-OFF TIME UNIT REGISTER)

R/W-10100000	
BOUNIT<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **BOUNIT<7:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Period Unit Field bits

The number of Base time units for the basic back-off time unit used by CSMA-CA algorithm.

11111111 = 256 Base time units

•

•

•

00000000 = 1 Base time unit

REGISTER 2-27: STRMTOH/STRMTOL (STREAM TIME-OUT REGISTER)

R/W-11111111	
STRMTO<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8

R/W-11111111	
STRMTO<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 15-0 **STRMTO<15:0>:** Stream Time-Out bits

The STRMTO<15:0> bits indicate the maximum number of allowed Base time units between the end of one RX Stream packet and the successful reception of the next. If no RX Stream packet is successfully received within this time, STRMIF is set.

REGISTER 2-28: OFFTM (OFF-TIMER REGISTER)

R/W-00000000	
OFFTM<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **OFFTM<7:0>:** OFF-Timer Field bits

This value sets the minimum PLL OFF time in 1 µs resolution.

Minimum OFF Time = OFFTM<7:0> * 32

If this register is set to 0xFF, PLL will remain off.

REGISTER 2-29: ADDR (ADDRESS REGISTER)

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<63:56>	
bit 63	bit 56

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<55:48>	
bit 55	bit 48

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<47:40>	
bit 47	bit 40

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<39:32>	
bit 39	bit 32

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<31:24>	
bit 31	bit 24

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<23:16>	
bit 23	bit 16

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8

R/W-00000000	
ADDR<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
-n = Value at POR	‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 63-0 **ADDR<63:0>:** Long Address Field bits

Current device’s long address (LSB stored). For proprietary frames, the number of address bytes is defined in ADDRSZ<2:0>. For addresses less than 8 octets, the least significant bits of this register will be used.

REGISTER 2-30: SHADDRH/SHADDRL (SHORT ADDRESS REGISTER)

R/W-00000000	
SHADDR<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8

R/W-00000000	
SHADDR<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 15-0 **SHADDR<15:0>:** Short Address Field bits
Current device's short address (LSB stored). Only used in 802.15.4 mode.

REGISTER 2-31: PANIDH/PANIDL (PAN IDENTIFIER REGISTER)

R/W-00000000	
PANID<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8

R/W-00000000	
PANID<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 15-0 **PANID<15:0>:** PAN Identifier Field bits
Current device's PAN Identifier (LSB stored). Only used in 802.15.4 mode.

REGISTER 2-32: SECHDRINDX (SECURITY HEADER INDEX REGISTER)

R-0	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECHDRINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECHDRINDX<6:0>:** Security Header Index Field bits

This field defines the portion of the header on that authentication operations are performed.

For MAC layer security, SECHDRINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the MAC Header from the beginning of the frame, as stored in the buffer (that is, 0 = Length field, 1 = FrameCtrl field, and so on), and is loaded automatically for both 802.15.4 and proprietary frames(1).

For Network layer security, SECHDRINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the Network Header from the beginning of the frame and must be loaded by the Host Controller for 802.15.4 frames only (for proprietary frames, the MAC automatically loads it).

Note 1: Setting the DTSM bit will disable the automatic computation of this field in TX mode.

REGISTER 2-33: SECPAYINDX (SECURITY PAYLOAD INDEX REGISTER)

R-0	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECPAYINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECPAYINDX<6:0>:** Security Payload Index Field bits

This field defines the portion of the payload over which encryption/decryption operations are performed.

For MAC layer security, SECPAYINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the MAC payload from the beginning of the frame, as stored in the buffer (that is, 0 = Length field, 1 = FrameCtrl field, and so on), and is loaded automatically for both 802.15.4 and proprietary frames(1).

For Network layer security, SECPAYINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the payload from the beginning of the frame and must be loaded by the Host Controller for 802.15.4 frames only (for proprietary frames, the MAC automatically loads it).

Note 1: Setting the DTSM bit will disable the automatic computation of this field in TX mode.

REGISTER 2-34: SECENDINDX (SECURITY END INDEX REGISTER)

R-00	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECENDINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECENDINDX<6:0>:** Security End Index Field bits(1)

This field defines the end of the payload over which security operations are performed.

Note 1: Setting the DTSM bit will disable the automatic computation of this field in TX mode.

REGISTER 2-35: MACDEBUG (MAC DEBUG CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W/HC-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0
BUF1TXPP	BUF2TXPP	BUF1RXPP	BUF2RXPP	TXRDBUF	RXWRBUF	BUSRDBUF	BUSWRBUF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **BUF1TXPP:** Buffer 1 TX Process Packet bit

Setting this bit will perform all of the processing (CRC generation and security) on BUF1 that would normally be done before transmitting a packet, but without actually transmitting the packet.

bit 6 **BUF2TXPP:** Buffer 2 TX Process Packet bit

Setting this bit will perform all of the processing (CRC generation and security) on BUF2 that would normally be done before transmitting a packet, but without actually transmitting the packet.

bit 5 **BUF1RXPP:** Buffer 1 RX Process Packet bit

Setting this bit will perform all of the processing (CRC checking and security) on BUF1 that would normally be done when receiving a packet, but without actually receiving the packet.

This bit should be asserted while downloading security materials and so on during debug.

bit 4 **BUF2RXPP:** Buffer 2 RX Process Packet bit

Setting this bit will perform all of the processing (CRC checking and security) on BUF2 that would normally be done when receiving a packet, but without actually receiving the packet.

This bit should be asserted while downloading security materials and so on, during debug.

bit 3 **TXRDBUF:** TX Read Buffer Flag bit

Indicates the physical buffer number (0 = BUF1, 1 = BUF2) that the TX hardware is reading.

bit 2 **RXWRBUF:** RX Write Buffer Flag bit

Indicates the physical buffer number (0 = BUF1, 1 = BUF2) that the RX hardware is writing to.

bit 1 **BUSRDBUF:** Bus Read Buffer Flag bit

Indicates the physical buffer number (0 = BUF1, 1 = BUF2) that the SFR bus is reading. This bit is only used in RX-Streaming mode.

bit 0 **BUSWRBUF:** Bus Write Buffer Flag bit

Indicates the physical buffer number (0 = BUF1, 1 = BUF2) that the SFR bus is writing to. This bit is only used in TX-Streaming mode.

REGISTER 2-36: CCACON1 (CCA CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-001100
CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **CCABUSY:** Clear Channel Assessment Busy Flag bit

This bit represents the result of the latest CCA measurement.

1 = Medium is busy
0 = Medium is silent

bit 6 **CCAST:** Clear Channel Assessment Start bit(1)

By setting this register bit, the MCU triggers starting a new CCA measurement. This register bit is cleared by the hardware when the CCA measurement is done (EDCCAIF is set) and CCABUSY is valid.

bit 5-0 **RSSITHR<5:0>:** RSSI Threshold bits

This threshold is used in CCA operation when Energy detect or Energy and Carrier Sense mode is selected.

Representation: resolution of 2 dB/LSB

Note 1: RX chain should be turned on (RXEN = 1) to perform this measurement. Packet reception is not disabled during the measurement, main purpose is testing.

REGISTER 2-37: CCACON2 (CCA CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-01	R/W-01
CSTHR<3:0>	CCALEN<1:0>	CCAMODE<1:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **CSTHR<3:0>:** Carrier Sense Threshold Field bits

bit 3-2 **CCALEN<1:0>:** Clear Channel Assessment Length bits(1)

Value N indicates duration of 2^N * 32 µs.

bit 1-0 **CCAMODE<1:0>:** Clear Channel Assessment Mode Field bits(2)

11 = CCA Mode 3/a in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard: Energy AND Carrier Sense Threshold
10 = CCA Mode 2 in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard: Carrier Sense Threshold
01 = CCA Mode 1 in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard: Energy Detect Threshold (default)
00 = CCA Mode 3/b in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard: Energy OR Carrier Sense Threshold

Note 1: The IEEE 802.15.4 standard requires 128 µs, but shorter length is recommended when using higher rates with optimized preamble mode (RATECON.OPTIMAL = 1).

2: The measured RSSI result is stored in EDMEAN<7:0> register in all modes except Mode 2.

REGISTER 2-38: EDCON (ENERGY DETECT CONTROL REGISTER)(1))

R-00	R/W-01	R/W/HC-0	R/W-1110
r	EDMODE	EDST	EDLEN<3:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear		

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **EDMODE:** Energy Detect Mode Select bit

1 = Energy Detect Sampling Mode. ED duration is 128 µs. A single atomic RSSI-peak measurement is accomplished. The result is stored in EDPEAK<7:0> register.

0 = Energy Detect Scan Mode. ED duration is set by EDLEN<3:0>. The result is stored in EDMEAN<7:0> register.

bit 4 **EDST:** Energy Detect Measurement Start bit

By setting this register bit, the MCU triggers starting a new ED measurement. This register bit is cleared by the hardware when the ED measurement is done (EDCCAIF is not changed) and values in EDMEAN<7:0> and EDPEAK<7:0> are valid.

If the ED measurement is aborted (RX state is changed, or the EDST bit is cleared by the MCU), then EDCCAIF is not changed.

bit 3-0 **EDLEN<3:0>:** Energy Detect Measurement Length Field bits(2)

Value *M* indicates a sequence of (M + 1) * 8 atomic RSSI-peak measurements, each having the duration of 128 µs. At the end of the aggregate measurement, the mean and the peak value of the sequence are available in EDMEAN<7:0> and EDPEAK<7:0>.

Note 1: The RX chain should be turned on (RXEN = 1) to perform this measurement. Packet reception is disabled during the measurement.

2: When EDLEN<3:0> = M = 0xE, then the 128 µs atomic measurements are preformed 120 times, which is equal to the a BaseSuperFrameDuration parameter in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard.

REGISTER 2-39: EDMEAN (ENERGY DETECT MEAN INDICATION REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-00000000	
EDMEAN<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-0 **EDMEAN<7:0>:** Energy Detect Mean Indication Field bits

Measured mean signal strength during ED/CCA measurement.

REGISTER 2-40: EDPEAK (ENERGY DETECT PEAK INDICATION REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-00000000
EDPEAK<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-0 **EDPEAK<7:0>:** Energy Detect Peak Indication Field bits

Measured peak signal strength during ED measurement.

Computation: The gain-compensated RSSI value is averaged over intervals of 128 µs. The peak value obtained from a sequence of such measurements is stored in EDPEAK when EDMODE = 1.

REGISTER 2-41: CFOCON (CFO PRE COMPENSATION REGISTER)

R/W-0000	R/W-0000
CFOTX<3:0>	CFORX<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **CFOTX<3:0>:** TX Carrier Frequency Offset Field bits

This value can be written by the host to compensate for the carrier frequency offset of the node during transmission. Pre-compensation allows using crystals with wider tolerances.

Frequency Offset Unit is: 13 ppm/LSB. Two's complement encoding.

bit 3-0 **CFORX<3:0>:** RX Carrier Frequency Offset Field bits

This value can be written by the host to pre-compensate the Carrier Frequency Offset estimation window (±55 ppm).

Frequency Offset Unit is: 13 ppm/LSB. Two's complement encoding.

REGISTER 2-42: CFOMEAS (CFO MEASUREMENT INDICATION REGISTER)

R/W-00000000
CFOMEAS<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **CFOMEAS<7:0>:** CFO Measurement Field bits

If AFCOVR bit is cleared, then this register is written and valid when RXSFDIF is set with the value of the carrier frequency offset that was estimated during the acquisition of the packet. The host may use this value together with the LQI as a preamble quality indication. (The LQI is measured over the CFO compensated payload).

If AFCOVR bit is set, this receiver will compensate the carrier frequency offset. Note that in this case, the CFO estimation algorithm is disabled, thus ±13 ppm CFO can be tolerated. CFORX has no effect when AFCOVR is set.

Frequency Offset Unit is: ~1.62 ppm/LSB of the 2.4 GHz carrier. Two's complement encoding is used.

REGISTER 2-43: RATECON (RATE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **DIS2000:** Disable 2 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 2 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 6 **DIS1000:** Disable 1 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 1 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 5 **DIS500:** Disable 500 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 500 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 4 **DIS250:** Disable 250 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with non-standard-compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 3 **DISSTD:** Disable IEEE 802.15.4 compliant Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with IEEE 802.15.4 compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 2 **DIS125:** Disable 125 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 125 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 1 **OPTIMAL:** Optimized Preamble Selection bit

When this bit is set, then optimized preamble is used instead of legacy.

1 = Optimized preamble
0 = Legacy preamble

bit 0 **PSAV:** Power-Save Mode Selection bit

If this bit is set, frame detection is dependent on the RSSI signal, and the receive signal processor is turned on when a sudden and significant increase (PSAVTHR<3:0>) is detected in the signal strength or the signal strength is above an absolute level (DESENSTHR<3:0>).

1 = Power-Save mode
0 = Hi-Sensitivity mode

REGISTER 2-44: POWSAVE (POWER-SAVE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-1010	R/W-1010
DESENSTHR<3:0>	PSAVTHR<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **DESENSTHR<3:0>:** Desensitization Threshold Field bits

This field defines an absolute level on the RSSI signal to activate receive signal processor if and only if PSAV = 1.

Unit is 4 dB/LSB. Unsigned encoding is used.

bit 3-0 **PSAVTHR<3:0>:** Frame Detection Threshold Register Field bits

This field defines a relative (relative to the last 4 µs RSSI value) threshold level on the RSSI signal to activate receive signal processor, if PSAV = 1.

Unit is 0.5 dB/LSB. Unsigned encoding is used.

REGISTER 2-45: BBCON (BASEBAND CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-11	R/W-0	R/W-001
RNDMOD	AFCOVR	RXGAIN<1:0>	PRMBHOLD	PRMBSZ<2:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend:	W = Writable bit	R = Readable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **RNDMOD:** Random modulation bit

By setting this bit, the transmitter will randomly transmit DSSS symbols or MSK chips if PRMBHOLD bit is set. The purpose of this register is only for testing.

bit 6 **AFCOVR:** AFC override bit

By setting this bit, receiver will use CFOMEAS register as the CFO in reception.

bit 5-4 **RXGAIN<1:0>:** Receiver Gain Register Field bits

By setting this bit, the AGC operation can be inhibited in the receiver and the receiver radio gain configuration can be selected between three different gain levels. Encoding:

11 = AGC operation is enabled (default value)
10 = High gain
01 = Middle gain
00 = Low gain

This feature can be used for testing and streaming purposes. To reduce the required interframe-gap, the RXGAIN should be set to one of the fixed gain options when the MAC is in Streaming mode.

bit 3 **PRMBHOLD:** Preamble Hold Enable bit

Effect: Appends extra bytes to the transmitted preamble in endless repetition until it is cleared.

Details: The hardware checks this bit during transmission before finishing the preamble. The appropriate preamble byte and modulation format is applied as determined by DR<2:0> and the register OPTIMAL. When this flag is released the transmission of the current preamble byte is completed followed by transmitting the LENGTH field and the payload.

1 = Enable endless preamble repetition
0 = Disable/stop endless preamble repetition

bit 2-0 **PRMBSZ<2:0>:** Preamble Size Adjustment Field bits

Allows adjusting the transmitted preamble length when OPTIMAL = 1. Encoding:

500 kbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<2> + 4) units, where unit = 16 µs (1 octet at 500 kbps)

1 Mbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<1:0> + 8) units, where unit = 4 µs (1 octet at 2 Mbps)

2 Mbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<1:0> + 8) units, where unit = 4 µs (1 octet at 2 Mbps)

Legacy frames, and 125/250 kbps optimized frames are not affected by this register field.

REGISTER 2-46: IFGAP (INTER FRAME CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-000	R/W-10111
r	IFGAP<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4-0 **IFGAP<4:0>:** TX Interframe-Gap Field bits

This field allows configuring a TX interframe-gap ranging from 0 to 30 µs. This duration is enforced as a minimum separation between the last sample of a transmitted frame and the start of the preamble for a potential subsequent frame transmission. Unit is 2 µs/LSB.

REGISTER 2-47: TXPOW (TRANSMIT POWER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-000	R/W-11111
CHIPBOOST<2:0>	TXPOW<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **CHIPBOOST<2:0>:** TX Chip Boosting Field bits

This field modifies the spectrum of the OQPSK transmission.

bit 4-0 **TXPOW<4:0>:** TX Power Register Field bits

This field allows configuring a TX power ranging from -17.5 to 0 dBm. Encoding:

10101 = 0 dBm

•

•

•

00001 = -17.5 dBm

00000 = PA OFF

REGISTER 2-48: TX2IDLE (TRANSMIT POWER DOWN TO IDLE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-00011
r	TX2IDLE<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4-0 **TX2IDLE<4:0>:** Transmit Power Down to Idle Duration Field bits

Defines the duration of the interval while PLL cannot be tuned (turned off or change channel) following that the transmitter and external PA (if PAE = 1) are turned down together.

Representation: 1 µs/1 LSB. No offset.

REGISTER 2-49: TX2TXMA (TRANSMIT POWER-UP TO MEDIUM ACCESS CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-00011
r	TX2TXMA<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4-0 **TX2TXMA<4:0>:** Transmit Power-Up to Medium Access Configuration Field bits

Defines the time interval between turning on the internal transmitter of the device and the start time of medium access (start of the PHY-layer frame).

TX_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the transmitter, in the following scenarios:

PAEN = 0

PAEN = 1, but the PA is turned on first. PA_TO_TXMA = TX_TO_TXMA + PA transient time.

PAEN = 1, but the TX and PA transients are NOT sequenced.

TX_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the transmitter + PA_TO_TXMA:

PAEN = 1, and the transmitter is turned on first (transients are sequenced).

Representation: 1 µs/1 LSB. No offset.

REGISTER 2-50: EXTPA (EXTERNAL POWER AMPLIFIER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-00100
r	EXTPAP	PAEN	PA2TXMA<4:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **EXTPAP:** External Power Amplifier Polarity bit

1 = 3.3V turns Power Amplifier ON
0 = GND turns Power Amplifier ON

bit 5 **PAEN:** External Power Amplifier Enable bit

This bit enables the PA pin to output the control signal for external Power Amplifier.

bit 4-0 **PA2TXMA<4:0>:** External Power Amplifier Power-up to Medium Access Configuration Field bits

Defines the time interval between turning on the external PA of the device and the start time of medium access (start of the PHY-layer frame).

PA_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the external PA, in the following scenarios:

PAEN = 1, and the transmitter is turned on first. TX_TO_TXMA = PA_TO_TXMA + TX transient time.

PAEN = 1, but the TX and PA transients are NOT sequenced.

PA_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the PA + TX_TO_TXMA:

PAEN = 1, and the external power amplifier is turned on first (transients are sequenced).

Representation: 1 µs/1 LSB. No offset

REGISTER 2-51: EXTLNA (EXTERNAL LOW-NOISE AMPLIFIER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-00100
r	EXTLNAP	LNAEN	LNADLY<4:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **EXTLNAP:** External Low Noise Amplifier Polarity bit

1 = 3.3V turns Low-Noise Amplifier ON
0 = GND turns Low-Noise Amplifier ON

bit 5 **LNAEN:** External Low-Noise Power Amplifier Enable bit

This bit enables the LNA pin to output the control signal for external Low-Noise Amplifier.

bit 4-0 **LNADLY<4:0>:** External Low-Noise Amplifier Power-Up Transient Delay Field bits

Defines the duration between the LNA is turned on and the reception is valid.

LNA and internal receiver are turned on together. The longer transient is awaited before input signal is accepted as valid.

Representation: 1 µs/1 LSB. No offset.

REGISTER 2-52: BATMON (BATTERY MONITOR CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-1	R/W-11111
r	BATMONPD	BATMON<4:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown	
r = Reserved				

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **BATMONPD:** Battery Monitor Power Down bit

If battery monitor is working and battery voltage has dropped below the threshold by BATMON<4:0>, then WARNIF is set.

1 = Battery monitor is OFF
0 = Battery monitor is working

bit 4-0 **BATMON<4:0>:** Battery Monitor Threshold Field bits

$V_{THRESHOLD}$ = 3.6 - 0.071 * BATMON<4:0> (V)

REGISTER 2-53: SECKEY (SECURITY KEY REGISTER)

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<127:120>	
bit 127	bit 120

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<119:112>	
bit 119	bit 112

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<111:104>	
bit 111	bit 104

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<103:96>	
bit 103	bit 96

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<95:88>	
bit 95	bit 88

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<87:80>	
bit 87	bit 80

R/W-00000000

SECKEY<79:72>	
bit 79	bit 72

REGISTER 2-53: SECKEY (SECURITY KEY REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<71:64>	
bit 71	bit 64
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<63:56>	
bit 63	bit 56
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<55:48>	
bit 55	bit 48
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<47:40>	
bit 47	bit 40
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<39:32>	
bit 39	bit 32
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<31:24>	
bit 31	bit 24
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<23:16>	
bit 23	bit 16
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8
R/W-00000000	
SECKEY<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 127-0 **SECKEY<128:0>:** Security Key Field bits

Security key that is used in security operation.

REGISTER 2-54: SECNONCE (SECURITY NONCE REGISTER)

R/W/HS/HC-00000000	
SECNONCE<103:96>	
bit 103	bit 96
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE <95:88>	
bit 95	bit 88
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<87:80>	
bit 87	bit 80
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<79:72>	
bit 79	bit 72
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<71:64>	
bit 71	bit 64
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<63:56>	
bit 63	bit 56
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<55:48>	
bit 55	bit 48
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<47:40>	
bit 47	bit 40
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<39:32>	
bit 39	bit 32
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<31:24>	
bit 31	bit 24
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<23:16>	
bit 23	bit 16
R/W-00000000	
SECNONCE<15:8>	
bit 15	bit 8

REGISTER 2-54: SECNONCE (SECURITY NONCE REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

R/W-00000000
SECNONCE<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 103-0 **SECNONCE<103:0>:** Security Nonce Field bits

The register represents security nonce that is used in security operation.

This field is deterministic in both 802.15.4-2003 and 802.15.4-2006 standards. Device can automatically calculate this field.

REGISTER 2-55: SFD1 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 1 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-00100001
SFD1<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD1<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 1 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 0, and as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 1.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 2, 3, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits of SFD2.

REGISTER 2-56: SFD2 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 2 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11110001	
SFD2<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD2<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 2 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 0, and as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 1.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 1, 3, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits of SFD2.

REGISTER 2-57: SFD3 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-00111011	
SFD3<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD3<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 3 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 500 kbps rate.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the correspond digits in SFD<k>, k = 1, 2, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0.

REGISTER 2-58: SFD4 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 4 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11100101
SFD4<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD4<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 4 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 250 kbps rate when proprietary MAC is in use, otherwise the pattern defined in the standard is used instead, that is, 0xA7.

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, where k = 6 or 1, 2, 3. When OPTIMAL = 0, the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

REGISTER 2-59: SFD5 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 5 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-01001101
SFD5<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD5<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 5 Register Field bits

This octet is used as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 125 kbps rate.

REGISTER 2-60: SFD6 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 6 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-10101000	
SFD6<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD6<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 6 Register Field bits

When `OPTIMAL = 1`:

This octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate. This octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 125 kbps rate.

When `OPTIMAL = 0`:

The value 0xA7 is forbidden.The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 4 or 1, 2, 3.

REGISTER 2-61: SFD7 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 7 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11001000	
SFD7<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD7<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 7 Register Field bits

When `OPTIMAL = 1`, this octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate.

NOTES:

3.0 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION

3.1 Reset

MRF24XA has three reset types:

- Power-On Reset (POR) – MRF24XA has built-in POR circuitry that automatically resets all control registers when power is applied. After POR MRF24XA will start the internal calibration process. RDYIF interrupt is set when the device is ready to use.
- $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ Pin – MRF24XA can be reset by the host MCU by asserting the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin18 low. All control registers are reset to default value. By de-asserting the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin, MRF24XA will start the internal calibration process. RDYIF interrupt is set when the device is ready to use.
- Software Reset – Software Reset can be performed by the host MCU through the SPI interface. REGRST register (0x00) provides reset signals for the configuration registers, while FSMRST register (0x01) provides reset functionality for the internal state machines. The reset signals are asynchronous, their level is evaluated immediately without any internal synchronization.

  The recommended reset sequences:

  - FSMRST = 0x1F
  - REGRST = 0x3F
  - REGRST = 0x00
  - FSMRST = 0x00

REGISTER 3-1: REGRST (CONFIGURATION RESET)(1)

R-00	R/W-000000
r	REGRST<5:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5-0 **REGRST<5:0>:** Asynchronous Register Reset Field bits
111111 = Reset configuration registers to default
000000 = Release from reset

Note 1: After setting the field, the host MCU must also clear it to release the device from reset.

REGISTER 3-2: FSMRST (CONTROLLER RESET)(1)

R-000	R/W-00000
r	FSMRST<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4-0 **FSMRST<4:0>:** Asynchronous Functional Reset Field bits
11111 = Reset state machines to default
00000 = Release from reset

Note 1: After setting the field, the host MCU must also clear it to release the device from reset.

TABLE 3-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH RESET

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
REGRST	r		REGRST<5:0>					
FSMRST	r			FSMRST<4:0>				

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

3.2 Interrupts

MRF24XA has one interrupt ($\overline{INT}$), pin 13 that signals interrupt events to the host MCU. Interrupt sources are enabled through PIE1 (0x08) to PIE4 (0x0B) register bits. All interrupts can be enabled or disabled by GIE bit (PINCON<6>). If GIE bit is cleared, all interrupts are disabled, and INT pin remains in inactive state. Despite interrupts are cleared by GIE bit clearing, the interrupt flags of the enabled interrupt sources are set. Interrupt flags are located in the PIR1 (0x04) to PIR4 (0x07) registers. The PIRX register bits clears-to-zero upon read.

Therefore, the host MCU should read and store the value of the PIRX registers and check the bits to determine which interrupt occurred. The $\overline{INT}$ pin will continue to signal an interrupt until all active interrupts flags in PIRX registers are read.

REGISTER 3-3: PINCON (PIN CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-1	R-0	R-x	R/W-0000
r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **GIE:** General Interrupt Enable bit

This bit enables to output IRQIF on $\overline{INT}$ pin. Note that the polarity of $\overline{INT}$ pin is active low.

bit 5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4 **IRQIF:** Interrupt Request Pending bit

This bit is the OR relationship of the interrupt flags that are enabled.

bit 3-0 **GPIOMODE <3:0>:** GPIO Mode Field bits

This bit field is out of scope.

3.2.1 PIEx - INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTERS

Register bits of PIE1 to PIE4 registers enable the appropriate interrupt sources to generate interrupts to the host MCU through $\overline{INT}$ pin. The interrupt is enabled by setting the appropriate bit to '1'.

REGISTER 3-4: PIE1 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 1)

R-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0
r	RDYIE	IDLEIE	r	CALSOIE	CALHAIE	r
bit 7						bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **RDYIE:** Ready Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RDYIF interrupt bit.

bit 4 **IDLEIE:** Idle Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the IDLEIF interrupt bit.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **CALSOIE:** Calibration Soft Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the CALSOIF interrupt bit.

bit 1 **CALHAIE:** Calibration Hard Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the CALHAIF interrupt bit.

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 3-5: PIE2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 2)

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TXIE	TXENCIE	TXMAIE	TXACKIE	TXCSMAIE	TXSZIE	TXOVFIE	FRMIE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **TXIE:** Transmit Interrupt Enable
This bit masks the TXIF interrupt register.

bit 6 **TXENCIE:** Transmit Encryption and Authentication Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXENCIF interrupt register.

bit 5 **TXMAIE:** Transmitter Medium Access Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXMAIF interrupt register.

bit 4 **TXACKIE:** Transmission Unacknowledged Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXACKIF interrupt register.

bit 3 **TXCSMAIE:** Transmitter CSMA Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXCSMAIF interrupt register.

bit 2 **TXSZIE:** Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXSZIF interrupt register.

bit 1 **TXOVFIE:** Transmitter Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXOVFIF interrupt register.

bit 0 **FRMIE:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag bit
This bit masks the FRMIF interrupt register.

REGISTER 3-6: PIE3 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 3)

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
RXIE	RXDECIE	RXTAGIE	r	RXIDENTIE	RXFLTIE	RXOVFIE	STRMIE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **RXIE:** Received Successful Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXIF interrupt register.

bit 6 **RXDECIE:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Passed Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXDECIF interrupt register.

bit 5 **RXTAGIE:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXTAGIF interrupt register.

bit 4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **RXIDENTIE:** Received Packet Identical Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXIDENTIF interrupt register.

bit 2 **RXFLTIE:** Received Packet Filtered Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXFLTIF interrupt register.

bit 1 **RXOVFIE:** Receiver Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXOVFIF interrupt register.

bit 0 **STRMIE:** Receive Stream Time-out Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the STRMIF interrupt register.

REGISTER 3-7: PIE4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 4)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **TXSFDIE:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the TXSFDIF interrupt register.

bit 6 **RXSFDIE:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the RXSFDIF Interrupt Enable.

bit 5 **ERRORIE:** General Error Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the ERRORIF interrupt register.

bit 4 **WARNIE:** Warning Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the WARNIF interrupt register.

bit 3 **EDCCAIE:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the EDCCAIF interrupt register.

bit 2 **GPIO2IE:** GPIO2 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO2IF interrupt register.

bit 1 **GPIO1IE:** GPIO1 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO1IF interrupt register.

bit 0 **GPIO0IE:** GPIO0 Interrupt Enable bit
This bit masks the GPIO0IF interrupt register.

3.2.2 PIRX- PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTERS

Register bits of PIR1 to PIR4 registers are indicating the source of the interrupt. The interrupt must be enabled by setting the appropriate bit to '1' in the corresponding PIEx register. The contents of the PIRX registers are automatically cleared by MRF24XA upon the host MCU reads the content of the register. MCU must store the PIRX register values as needed in the firmware.

REGISTER 3-8: PIR1 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 1)

R/HS-1	R-0	R/HS-0	R/W/HC-0	R-0	R/W/HS-0	R/W/HS-0	R-0
VREGIF	r	RDYIF	IDLEIF	r	CALSOIF	CALHAIF	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **VREGIF:** Voltage regulator On Interrupt Flag bit[(1)]

This is a NON-persistent bit. The register bit is initialized to 1 on 1.2V reset except when RESET is used and cleared only when PIR1 is read. Note that the corresponding IE bit is not implemented.

bit 6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **RDYIF:** Ready state Interrupt Flag bit

Set each time when READY state is reached:

- When calibration ended (CALST = 0)
- When initialization ended (INITDONESF = 1)
- When crystal is ramped up (XTALSF = 1)

This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 4 **IDLEIF:** Idle state Interrupt Flag bit

Set each time when IDLESF is set if it was not triggered by the MCU. Not changed when MCU aborts an action by clearing either of TXST, TXENC, RXDEC, EDST or CCA bits. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **CALSOIF:** Calibration Soft Interrupt Flag bit

This flag indicates that calibration is probably needed (CALST) although the radio is still functional. It also warns of a possible degradation in signal quality and current consumption, and a risk of CALHAIF interrupt. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 1 **CALHAIF:** Calibration Hard Interrupt Flag bit

This flag indicates that immediate calibration (CALST) is mandatory, otherwise the radio is not functional. The device enters into malfunction state. This bit is cleared, when PIR1 is read.

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

Note 1: Generated non-maskable interrupt is gated off until the 1.2V reset is released.

REGISTER 3-9: PIR2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 2)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **TXIF:** Transmission Done Interrupt Flag bit

The current TX operation (TXST) has successfully completed. This event is not changed when a hardware generated ACK packet has completed transmission or when a packet has been repeated. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **TXENCIF:** Transmit Encoding Interrupt Flag bit

The TX packet was successfully encrypted and/or complemented with a Message Integrity Code (MIC). Set by the device after TXENC = 1, when TXENC is cleared.
Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **TXMAIF:** Transmitter Medium Access Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the medium is accessed, that is, when the first sample in the preamble is transmitted on air. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **TXACKIF:** Transmission Unacknowledged Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Acknowledge is not received after the configured maximum number of transmission retries RETXMCNT<3:0>, provided that the frame control field of the transmitted frame indicates AckReq = 1 and AUTOACKEN = 1. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 3 **TXCSMAIF:** Transmitter CSMA Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when CSMA-CA finds the channel busy for BOMCNT<2:0> number of times, provided that CSMAEN = 1 is configured. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **TXSZIF:** Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag bit

Following TXST is set the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **TXOVFIF:** Transmitter Overflow Interrupt Flag bit

The Host Controller attempted to write a TX buffer that was not empty (TXBUFEMPTY = 0).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **FRMIF:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

REGISTER 3-10: PIR3 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 3)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
RXIF	RXDECIF	RXTAGIF	r	RXIDENTIF	RXFLTIF	RXOVFIF	STRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXIF:** Received Successful Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a frame has passed packet filtering and has been accepted (refer to Register 5-1). This interrupt flag is only set once for a packet and is not set when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission, (that is, sequence number matches with the previously received frame). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXDECIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Passed Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished without error.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **RXTAGIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished with error.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **RXIDENTIF:** Received Packet Identical Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission (that is, sequence number, source address matches with the previously received frame).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **RXFLTIF:** Received Packet Filtered Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a packet was received, but rejected by one or more RX filters (refer to Register 5-1). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **RXOVFIF:** Receiver Overflow Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate that a packet was received, but all RX buffers were full. Consequently the packet was not received, but was discarded instead(1).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **STRMIF:** Receive Stream Time-out Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate the duration specified in STRMTO has elapsed since the last received packet while in RX-Streaming mode, and the MAC clears the stored sequence number.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

Note 1: In packet-mode one buffer is used for received frames, whereas in RX-Streaming mode both buffers are used for reception.

REGISTER 3-11: PIR4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 4)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXSFDIF:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the last sample of the SFD field has been sent on the air.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXSFDIF:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the SFD field of the received frame is detected(1).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **ERRORIF:** General Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device, when malfunction state is reached.

bit 4 **WARNIF:** Warning Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when one of the following is occurred:

- Battery voltage has dropped below the threshold by BATMON<4:0> at 0x3F
- Indicating that resistor is missing or not connected well

bit 3 **EDCCAIF:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Energy-detect or CCA measurement is complete (following that the host MCU has set the EDST/CCAST bit to start the measurement and the device is clearing it in on completion).

Non-persistent. Cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **GPIO2IF:** GPIO2 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 1 **GPIO1IF:** GPIO1 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 0 **GPIO0IF:** GPIO0 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

Note 1: The detection latency (0…1 µs after the last sample of the SFD). Note that the SFD may trigger on noise or interference. Note that the CFOMEAS<7:0> indication becomes valid when RXSFDIF is asserted.

TABLE 3-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH INTERRUPTS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
PIR1	VREGIF	r	RDYIF	IDLEIF	r	CALSOIF	CALHAIF	r
PIR2	TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
PIR3	RXIF	RXDECIF	RXTAGIF	r	RXIDENTIF	RXFLTIF	RXOVFIF	STRMIF
PIR4	TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
PIE1	r		RDYIE	IDLEIE	r	CALSOIE	CALHAIE	r
PIE2	TXIE	TXENCIE	TXMAIE	TXACKIE	TXCSMAIE	TXSZIE	TXOVFIE	FRMIE
PIE3	RXIE	RXDECIE	RXTAGIE	r	RXIDENTIE	RXFLTIE	RXOVFIE	STRMIE
PIE4	TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
PINCON	r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>			

Legend: r = Reserved.

3.3 GPIO Functions and GPIO Interrupts

MRF24XA has three GPIO pins, GPIO2 pin 12, GPIO1 pin 11 and GPIO0 pin 10. GPIO pins can be used as general purpose IO pins or GPIOs can monitor internal states.

Refer to Register 3-17 for more information on GPIO monitoring.

3.3.1 GPIO GENERAL IO FUNCTIONALITIES

To operate MRF24XA GPIOx pins in general purpose IO mode, GPIOEN bit (0x0D<7>) must be set to '1' and GPIOMODE<3:0> bits (0x0C<3:0>) must be set to '0000'.

Input or output selection of GPIOs are configured by the TRISGPIOx bits (0x0D<6:4>). Clearing the TRISGPIOx bit sets the appropriate GPIO line to output mode. The default GPIO line direction is input after POR.

GPIO lines in input mode can be used with Schmitt Trigger input buffers. Schmitt Triggers can be enabled by STENGPIOx bits (0x0E<2:0>). Setting the STENGPIOx bit to '1' enables Schmitt Trigger input of the appropriate pin.

GPIO data can be read or written to through the GPIO bits (0x0D<2:0>).

GPIO lines can have active pull-up or pull-down. PULLENGPIOx (0x0F<2:0>) bits enable line pulling function. Setting PULLENGPIOx bit to '1' enables active pull up or pull down circuit. Pull direction can be set by PULLDIRGPIOx bit (0x0F<6:4>). Setting PULLDIRGPIOx bit to '1' defines pull-up, while clearing the bit defines pull-down on the appropriate GPIO line.

3.3.2 GPIO INTERRUPT HANDLING

GPIO lines can also generate interrupts. To use GPIO interrupts, the appropriate GPIOxIE bit (0x0B<2:0>) must be set to '1' to enable the interrupt generation. GIE bit (0x0C<6>) must also be set to '1' to enable interrupt generation on $\overline{INT}$ pin. The GPIO interrupt polarity can be selected through GPIOxP bits (0x0E<6:4>). Setting GPIOxP bit to '1' triggers interrupt logic at the rising edge of the input signal. While clearing the bit enables interrupt generation on the falling edge of the input pin.

REGISTER 3-12: PIR4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 4)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-3 Out of scope

bit 2 **GPIO2IF:** GPIO2 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 1 **GPIO1IF:** GPIO1 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 0 **GPIO0IF:** GPIO0 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

REGISTER 3-13: PIE4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE 4)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-3 Out of scope

bit 2 **GPIO2IE:** GPIO2 Interrupt Enable bit

This bit masks the GPIO2IF interrupt register.

bit 1 **GPIO1IE:** GPIO1 Interrupt Enable bit

This bit masks the GPIO1IF interrupt register.

bit 0 **GPIO0IE:** GPIO0 Interrupt Enable bit

This bit masks the GPIO0IF interrupt register.

REGISTER 3-14: GPIO (GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
GPIOEN	TRISGPIO2	TRISGPIO1	TRISGPIO0	r	GPIO2	GPIO1	GPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **GPIOEN:** GPIO Enable bit

This bit enables the GPIO's control, only if GPIOMODE is configured into Normal mode. The other GPIOMODE configuration automatically controls GPIO pins.

bit 6 **TRISGPIO2:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 2 Pin bit

If set, the pin is configured into input mode. Value can be read from GPIO2 bit.

If cleared, the pin is configured into output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO2 bit.

bit 5 **TRISGPIO1:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 1 Pin bit

If set, the pin is configured into input mode. Value can be read from GPIO1 bit.

If cleared, the pin is configured into output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO1 bit.

bit 4 **TRISGPIO0:** Tri-state Control for GPIO 0 Pin bit

If set, the pin is configured into input mode. Value can be read from GPIO0 bit.

If cleared, the pin is configured into output mode. Value can be set through the GPIO0 bit.

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **GPIO2:** GPIO 2 Value bit

This bit represents the value on the GPIO 2 pin.

bit 1 **GPIO1:** GPIO 1 Value bit

This bit represents the value on the GPIO 1 pin.

bit 0 **GPIO0:** GPIO 0 Value bit

This bit represents the value on the GPIO 0 pin.

REGISTER 3-15: STGPIO (SCHMITT TRIGGER GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
r	GPIO2P	GPIO1P	GPIO0P	r	STENGPIO2	STENGPIO1	STENGPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **GPIO2P:** GPIO 2 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO2IF polarity when configured into input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 5 **GPIO1P:** GPIO 1 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO1IF polarity when configured into input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 4 **GPIO0P:** GPIO 0 Polarity bit

This bit controls GPIO0IF polarity when configured into input mode.

1 = Rising edge
0 = Falling edge

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **STENGPIO2:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 2

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 2 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

bit 1 **STENGPIO1:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 1

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 1 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

bit 0 **STENGPIO0:** Schmitt Trigger Enable GPIO 0

This bit enables Schmitt-trigger circuit on GPIO 0 pad. It is turned off by default.

1 = Schmitt trigger enabled
0 = Schmitt trigger disabled

REGISTER 3-16: PULLGPIO (PULL CONTROL GENERAL PURPOSE I/O REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
r	PULLDIRGPIO2	PULLDIRGPIO1	PULLDIRGPIO0	r	PULLENGPIO2	PULLENGPIO1	PULLENGPIO0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **PULLDIRGPIO2:** Pull Direction on GPIO 2 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 2 pin.
1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 5 **PULLDIRGPIO1:** Pull Direction on GPIO 1 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 1 pin.
1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 4 **PULLDIRGPIO0:** Pull Direction on GPIO 0 bit

These bits control the weak-pull circuit direction on GPIO 0 pin.
1 = Pull-up
0 = Pull-down

bit 3 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 2 **PULLENGPIO2:** Pull Enable on GPIO 2 bit

This bit enables to weak-pull circuit in GPIO 2 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.
1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

bit 1 **PULLENGPIO1:** Pull Enable on GPIO 1 bit

This bit enables to weak-pull circuit in GPIO 1 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.
1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

bit 0 **PULLENGPIO0:** Pull Enable on GPIO 0 bit

This bit enables to weak-pull circuit in GPIO 0 pin. Note that when pin is configured to output, weak-pull circuit is automatically disabled.
1 = Pull enabled
0 = Pull disabled

REGISTER 3-17: PINCON (PIN CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-1	R-0	R-1	R/W-0000
r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **GIE:** General Interrupt Enable bit
This bit enables to output IRQIF on $\overline{INT}$ pin. Note that the polarity of $\overline{INT}$ pin is active low.

bit 5 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 4 **IRQIF:** Interrupt Request Pending bit
This bit is the OR relationship of the interrupt flags that are enabled.

bit 3-0 **GPIOMODE <3:0>:** GPIO Mode Field bit
This field allows redefining the functionality of the GPIO pins Encoding:

- 11xx = Reserved
- 1011 = GPIO pins are used for Receive streaming (RXSTREAM). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {RXWRBUF, BUSRDBUF, RXBUFFUL}.
- 1010 = GPIO pins are used for Transmit streaming (TXSTREAM). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {TXRDBUF, BUSWRBUF, TXBUFEMPTY}.
- 1001 = Reserved
- 1000 = Reserved
- 0111 = Reserved
- 0110 = Reserved
- 0101 = Intended for supporting Precise Network Time Synchronization (TIMESYN). GPIO<0> is used to output TX, while GPIO<1> to output RX SFD indication pulses. GPIO<2> can be used as in "NORMAL" operation mode.
- 0100 = GPIO pins are used for Radio monitoring (RFMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output RFOP<2:0>.
- 0011 = GPIO pins are used for MAC monitoring (MACMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output MACOP<3:1>.
- 0010 = GPIO pins are used for RXFSM monitoring (RXFSMMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output receiver state-machine
  - 000 = Preamble search
  - 001 = Hi-rate SFD search
  - 010 = Mid-rate SFD search
  - 011 = Low-rate SFD search
  - 100 = Legacy length field processing
  - 101 = Payload processing
- 0001 = GPIO pins are used for AGC monitoring (AGCMON). Pins GPIO<2:0> are used to output {AGCHOLD, GAIN<1:0>} where AGCHOLD is an internal flag set when a preamble is detected by a receiver, and cleared when the AGC is set free after the end of the frame.
- 0000 = GPIO pins are used as General Purpose I/O's by the host MCU (NORMAL).

TABLE 3-3: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH GPIO FUNCTIONALITIES

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
PIR4	TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
PIE4	TXSFDIE	RXSFDIE	ERRORIE	WARNIE	EDCCAIE	GPIO2IE	GPIO1IE	GPIO0IE
GPIO	GPIOEN	TRISGPIO2	TRISGPIO1	TRISGPIO0	r	GPIO2	GPIO1	GPIO0
STGPIO	r	GPIO2P	GPIO1P	GPIO0P	r	STENGPIO2	STENGPIO1	STENGPIO0
PULLGPIO	r	PULLDIRGPIO2	PULLDIRGPIO1	PULLDIRGPIO0	r	PULLENGPIO2	PULLENGPIO1	PULLENGPIO0
PINCON	r	GIE	r	IRQIF	GPIOMODE<3:0>			

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

3.4 PA and LNA Outputs

MRF24XA has a Power Amplifier (PA) control pin (pin 20) and a Low Noise Amplifier (LNA) control pin (pin 21). These pins are capable of handling external PAs and LNAs or external antenna switch circuits. MRF24XA can also tolerate different start up times of different external circuits by sending or accepting data if the external circuits have completed their ramp up. MRF24XA can handle both active high or active low control signal sensitive circuits.

Refer to **Section 9.13 "External Power Amplifier (PA)/Low-Noise Amplifier (LNA)"** for more information.

3.5 Battery Monitor

The voltage level on the battery can be monitored. If the battery monitoring is enabled and the voltage level drops below a threshold, voltage interrupt (WARNIF) is asserted. Refer to Register 3-18 for more information on the battery.

REGISTER 3-18: BATMON (BATTERY MONITOR CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-1	R/W-11111
r	BATMONPD	BATMON<4:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **BATMONPD:** Battery Monitor Power-Down bit

If battery monitor is working and battery voltage has dropped below the threshold by BATMON<4:0> then WARNIF is set.

1 = Battery monitor is OFF
0 = Battery monitor is working

bit 4-0 **BATMON<4:0>:** Battery Monitor Threshold Field bits

$V_{THRESHOLD}$ = 3.6 - 0.071 * BATMON<4:0> (V)

NOTES:

4.0 GENERAL TRANSCEIVER OPERATIONS

4.1 MAC Architecture

The architecture of MAC-layer processing is illustrated in Figure 4-1.

In reception, the receive signal processor acquires the synchronization header of the frame on-air, and demodulates the frame starting from the LENGTH field. The demodulated data is written directly into the Receiver Buffer (Buffer 2 by default) if the targeted buffer is declared empty (RXBUFFUL = 0). After LENGTH number of bytes are received into the buffer (and RSV data are appended), the frame is parsed according to the selected framing mode (IEEE 802.15.4 or proprietary). The Frame Control Sequence (FCS) is checked to detect corruption by noise. Corrupted frames or frames not addressed to this node are rejected (discarded) as configured by the host. Rejection means that reception is completed now and the Receive Buffer status remains empty (RXBUFFUL = 0). It is configurable whether the frame is discarded silently or generates an interrupt to the host.

If a frame is accepted and Acknowledge is requested for the frame, then the radio turns to transmit and sends an Acknowledgement. As other features, automatic ACK-sending can be enabled or bypassed.

If the frame is the duplicate of a previously received and accepted frame then the frame is discarded (following Acknowledgement). Otherwise, the frame is the first copy of an accepted frame, which must be reported to the host. To lock the buffer from overwriting by a new frame RXBUFFUL is set (1) automatically. RXIF interrupt is generated for the host, which completes the reception.

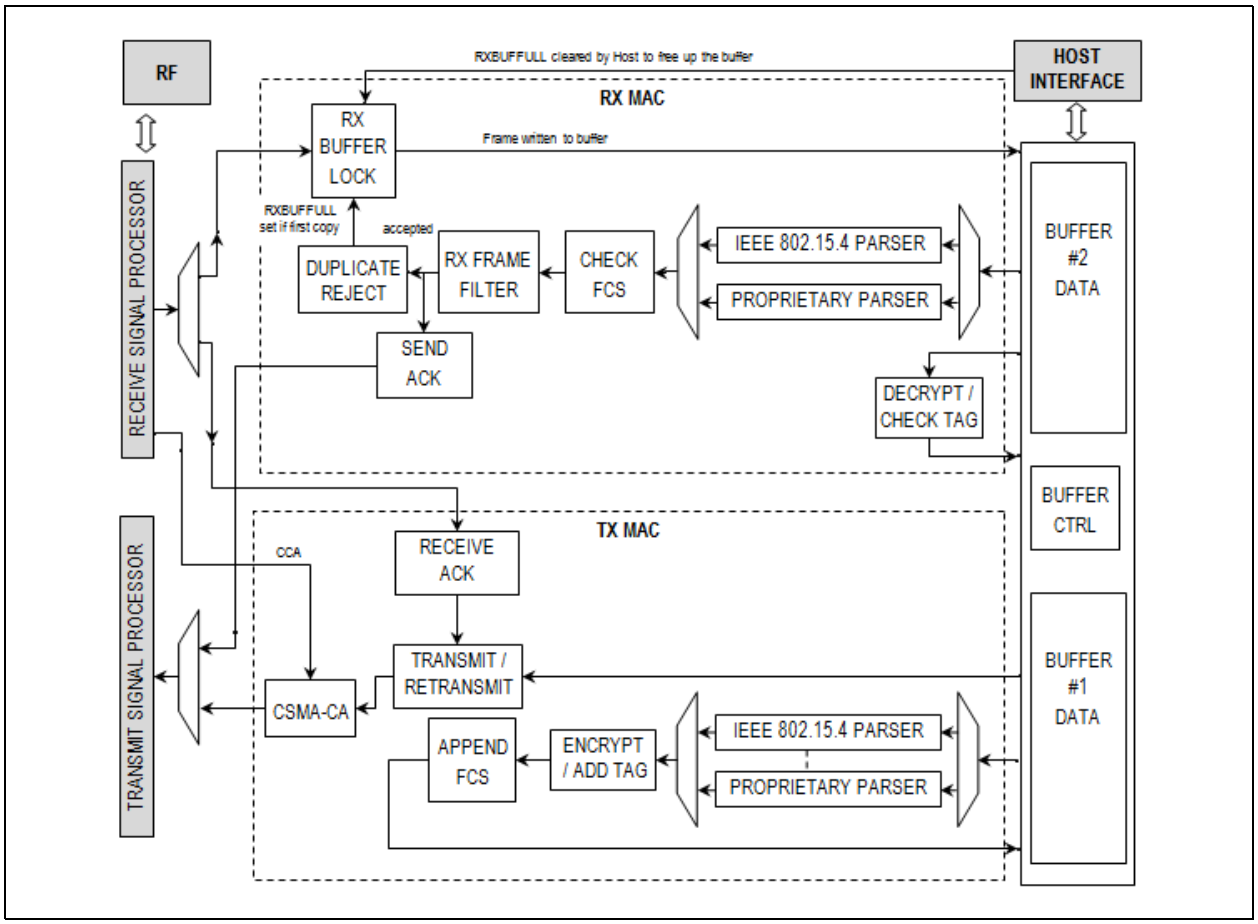
The host MCU will only access the Receive Buffer when RXBUFFUL is set (1). To free up the buffer, the host will clear RXBUFFUL (0).

If the frame has been encrypted or contains an authentication tag (MIC) then the Host MCU shall run the decrypt/authenticate operation before it reads the payload and frees up the buffer.

When sending, the host MCU constructs the frame, downloads it to the transmit buffer (Buffer 0 by default), and triggers transmission after the last byte. The device processes the content of the buffer in-place. After parsing, a security processing takes place if required, finally an FCS is generated and appended to the frame. The LENGTH is adjusted each time an authentication tag (MIC) or FCS is appended to the frame.

After in-place frame processing the medium is accessed using the Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Avoidance (CSMA-CA). The RF transmit chain can only be enabled when the channel is free, or if CSMA is bypassed. As soon as the RF can transmit, the Transmit Signal Processor starts sending the Synchronization Header (SHR). This is followed by the buffer content up the FCS. If an Acknowledgement is requested then the RF chain is turned into receive. If ACK is not received before the expiration of a time-out then the transmission can automatically start over from CSMA through SHR- transmission and transmitting the SHR-transmission frame if configured so. After successful sending an interrupt is generated to the host MCU. Only either the TX MAC or the RX MAC is active at a time.

FIGURE 4-1: MAC FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



4.2 Operations Overview

4.2.1 TERMINOLOGY

Node denotes the wireless communication node formed by a MRF24XA device and a host MCU. Device denotes the MRF24XA device. Software/SW denotes the software running in the Host MCU. The device does not contain a processor core that would run software. Frame and Packet are used interchangeably.

4.2.2 HOST INTERFACE

The host MCU controls the device over SPI (max. 10 MHz), whereas the device indicates task completion or failure events, and frames received over the air by raising an interrupt. Most interrupt flags can be masked, that means they are still set on the respective event, but cannot activate the interrupt pin on the device. The host services the interrupts through reading the interrupt register. (The interrupt bytes are self-cleared on SPI-read.) By convention, the “IF” suffix used in mnemonics refers to “Interrupt Flag”. For example, TXIF and RXIF. For software troubleshooting, the interrupt flags can be set by the host.

4.2.3 BUFFERS

The device has two frame buffers (128 bytes each). SPI allows accessing each byte in the frame buffer at its own address. By default, the buffer starting at address 0x200 is used for transmission (BUF1) and the buffer starting at address 0x300 is used for reception (BUF2).

4.2.4 OPERATING STATES

The state transitions described in the following section can also be referred in the state transition chart in Figure 4-2. After the battery change, the device powers up. The first interrupt after power-up is VREGIF, indicating that the 1.2V regulator has started in the device. The SPI is operational from this point on, so that the MCU can service the interrupt by reading the interrupt source registers (Register 2-3 to Register 2-6 are not accessible). By reading the POR flag (1) in the STATUS register the SW will identify that the device has gone through Power-on Reset, and must be reconfigured. After the crystal oscillator has stabilized (1-3 ms) and initial calibration is complete RDYIF interrupt is set by the device. All the registers are accessible now, and the device is in RFOFF state, that means the transmit and receive chains are powered-down, however the synthesizer is remained running. The MCU applies the initial configurations to the device by writing its registers through the SPI. As a last update, the MCU clears the POR (0) flag. When ready, the software may, for example, send the device to Deep Sleep mode by setting its DSLEEP (1) bit.

Most of the mission-time of a low-power node, the device will be in Deep Sleep mode. In this power mode, the 1.2V on-chip regulator and the core are powered off completely, but the device must get a stable unregulated (1.8-3.6V) rail to retain device draws about 40 nA in this mode.

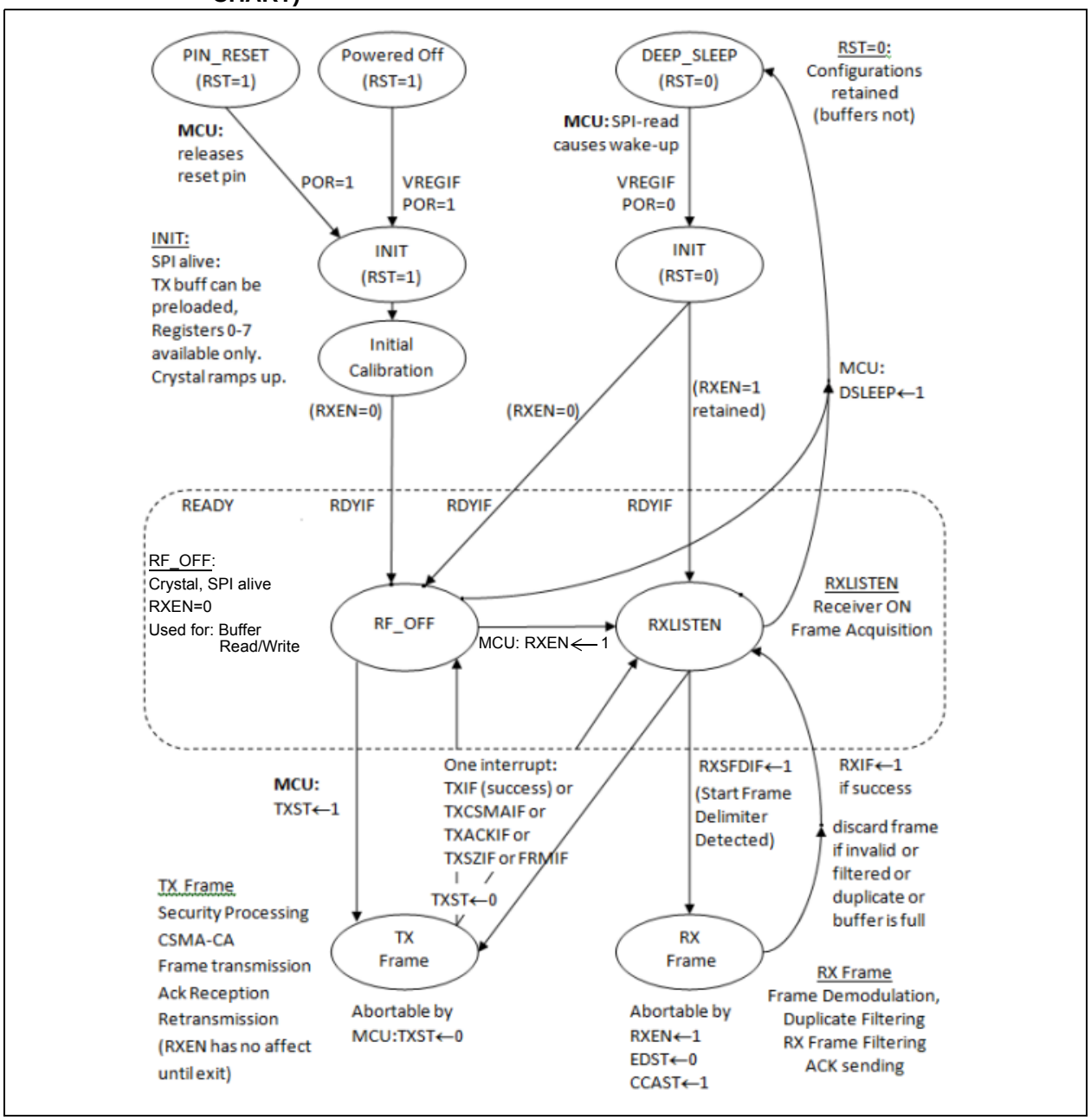
By doing a dummy SPI read operation (at least four changes on SDI line is necessary) the MCU wakes up the device from Deep Sleep mode when needed. The first interrupt after wake-up is VREGIF, indicating that the 1.2V regulator has started in the device. The SPI is operational from this point on, so that the MCU can service the interrupt: reading the interrupt source register. POR flag retains its status before Deep Sleep mode (0). The transmit buffers are accessible for pre-load. After the crystal oscillator has stabilized (1-3 ms) RDYIF interrupt is set by the device, without going through re-calibration. All the registers are accessible now. Previously stored configuration has been retained during Deep Sleep, thus calibration is not necessary. If, for example, the device is configured to enable RX mode (RXEN = 1), then the device will start the synthesizer immediately after RDYIF and when the RF carrier is stable (cca. 90 µs), the receiver is turned ON (cca. 20 µs) automatically. (All state transitions sequenced between transmit, receive, and OFF states are automatic and can also handle additional external LNA and/or PA components, if associated settings were completed.) The device is waiting for a frame in the reached Receiver state.

When a frame is received the device sends an RXIF interrupt to the device and locks the RX buffer from overwriting it by setting RXBUFFUL (1). The MCU frees the buffer after reading the frame. Automatic Acknowledge is sent in response to the frame if required. Refer to **Section 4.10 “Frame Reception in Packet Mode”** for more information on the Receive State machine, control/status bits and the interrupts.

To transmit, the MCU sets the TXST flag (1) in the device. This flag is cleared by the device when sending is complete. Sending may involve listening into the channel before transmission doing back-off when the channel is busy (CSMA-CA), and requesting an Acknowledge for the frame. If either the frame or the Acknowledge gets corrupted over the medium then re-transmissions can be performed. Completion is only confirmed when the Acknowledge is received. Either success or abortion is indicated through respective interrupts (TXIF/TXCSMAIF/TXACKIF) when TXST is deasserted (0). The device returns to receive. Refer to **Section 4.9 “Frame Transmission in Packet Mode”** for more information on the Receive State machine, control/status bits and the interrupts.

In the message sequence chart in Figure 4-3, both the MCU and the device can be followed, for transmit and receive nodes simultaneously, in a possible scenario.

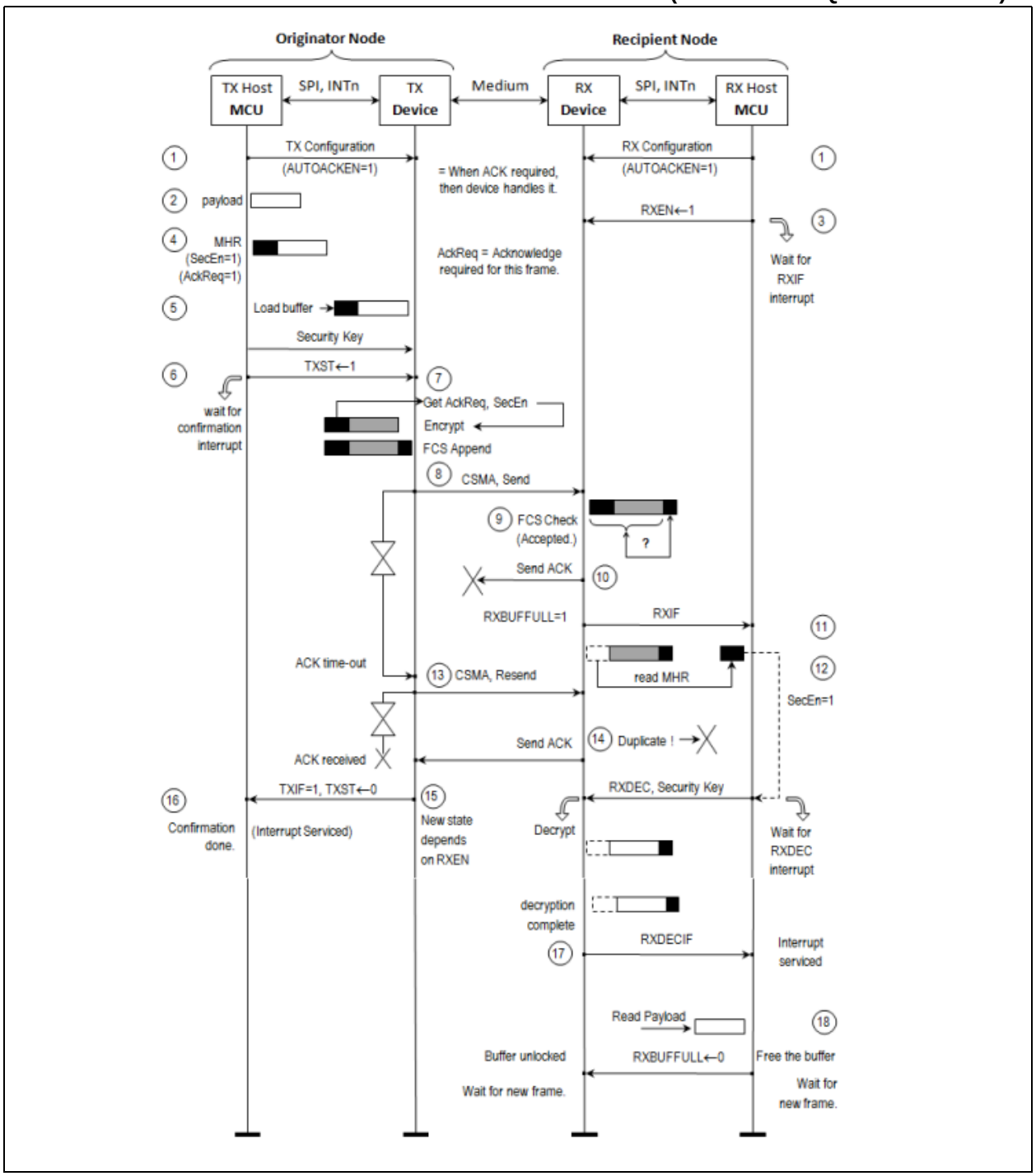
FIGURE 4-2: MRF24XA TOP LEVEL STATE MACHINE (SIMPLIFIES STATE TRANSITION CHART)



Frame sending/reception involves the following steps as shown in the Figure 4-3. (Note: Sending = originator, Receiving = recipient)

1. Originator and Recipient Nodes apply the previously shared (negotiated/global) configurations.
2. Recipient MCU enables reception in the device by setting the RXEN (1) control bit in the RXCON1 register.
3. Originator MCU constructs the payload.
4. Originator MCU constructs the MAC frame header applying the per-frame configurations.
5. Originator MCU loads the MAC frame to the device.
6. Originator MCU starts transmit operation by setting the TXST (1) control bit (MACCON1 register) in the device. MAC layer encryption is automatically applied while for network layer encryption
7. Originator device executes in-place processing on the frame. For example, encryption and FCS appending, and checks the configuration of the frame header that affects the per-frame device behavior for this frame (for example, whether an Acknowledge is requested from the recipient).
8. Originator device attempts to send the message to the receiver device. Before accessing the medium it may be required to check that the medium is not used by another device (on the same channel frequency) or jammed by interferers before sending. The applied procedure is called CSMA-CA. When the channel is clear, it sends the frame. Finally, the device waits for an Acknowledge, (the frame was configured to request one).
9. Recipient device receives the frame and parses it. The frame is accepted (The frame could be rejected. For example, due to destination address or FCS mismatch).
10. Recipient device sends an ACK.
11. Recipient device generates an RXIF (1) interrupt to its host MCU, when ACK-sending is complete. Since the frame has been accepted and acknowledged, RXBUFFUL is set (1) by the device. This protects the frame from being overwritten by a subsequent different frame.
12. Recipient MCU may trigger in-place processing (for example, decryption by setting RXDEC) on the frame after servicing the interrupt.
13. Originator device fails to receive the ACK-frame. Therefore, it starts over transmitting the same frame (re-transmission) by doing CSMA-CA first, then sending.
14. Recipient device receives the re-transmitted frame and finds out it is a duplicate. It still sends another ACK-frame to it, but discards the duplicate frame.
15. Originator device receives the ACK and confirms the successful sending to its host MCU by generating a TXIF (1) interrupt. It also clears the TXST (0) control/status bit. Originator device returns to reception mode if RXEN = 1 is configured, otherwise it goes to TRXOFF.
16. MCU services the interrupt (TXIF) to learn the confirmation. Transaction is completed with success.
17. Meanwhile, recipient device has completed the in-place decryption of the frame, and indicates this to its host MCU by generating a RXDECIF (1) interrupt.
18. Recipient MCU reads the decrypted frame from the buffer and unlocks the buffer by clearing the control/status flag RXBUFFUL (0) of the device.

FIGURE 4-3: WIRELESS SENDING: EXAMPLE SCENARIO (MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHART)

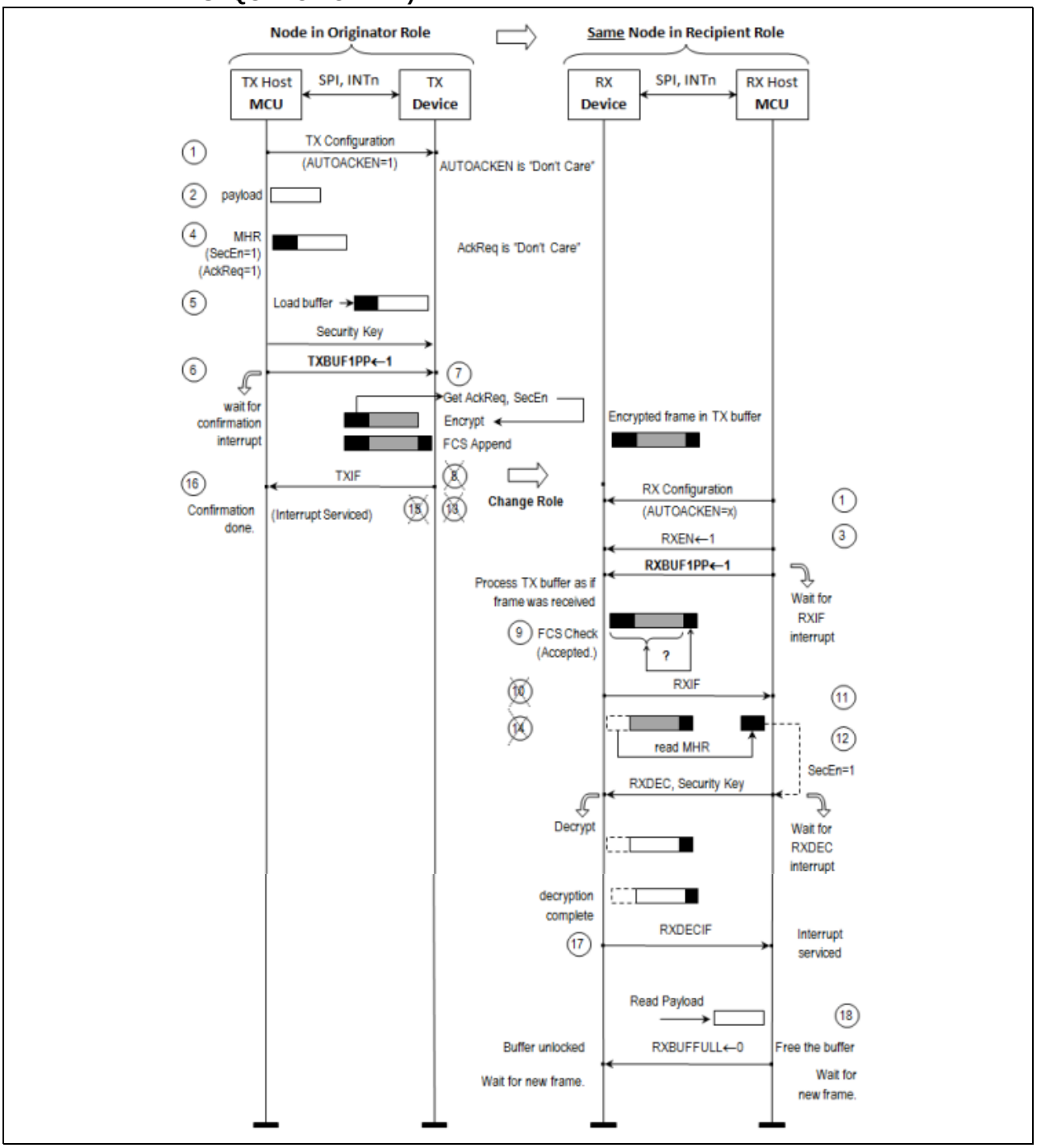


In-place processing (whether transmitting or receiving-side) can be tested using a single node. This is useful in device testing or software troubleshooting. Figure 4-4 illustrates the procedure of in-place test using a single node. Note that the Originator and the Recipient node can be the same hardware.

The processing originally triggered by TXST is now triggered by TXBUF1PP. TXIF interrupt is generated at the end of in-place processing, without attempting to physically send the frame. TXBUF1PP is cleared by the device at the same time.

Buffer 1 holds the processed (encrypted, FCS-appended) frame. By setting RXBUF1PP, frame filtering is performed and RXIF interrupt is generated. Alternatively, the processing can be performed in Buffer 2 (the normal receive buffer) using TXBUF2PP and RXBUF2PP. Note that an unlike TXBUF1PP and TXBUF2PP, RXBUF1PP and RXBUF2PP are not self-cleared when RXIF is set. Instead they select which buffer needs to be processed when RXDEC is issued.

FIGURE 4-4: IN-PLACE TEST USING A SINGLE NODE: EXAMPLE SCENARIO (MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHART)



4.3 Global vs. Per-Node vs. Per-Packet Configurations

For certain configurable parameters, the selected options apply to all nodes in a network. The global attributes are:

- The MAC frame format used in the network (configured by the FRMFMT register bit)
- The FCS appending and checking method (refer to CRCSZ register bit)
- The medium access (configured by the CSMAEN register bit)

4.3.1 GLOBAL CONFIGURATIONS

Sometimes global attributes can be negotiated through management information travelling in the MAC payload (of the current frame or a previous frame). For example,

- Address size in Proprietary MAC-framing mode
- Network Layer security enabling and security material in IEEE 802.15.4-compliant MAC-framing mode

The mentioned global attributes are shared between all nodes of the network, because all the nodes access the same medium, and the sending and recipient sides must process the frame consistently.

4.3.2 PER-PACKET CONFIGURATIONS

As opposed to global configurations, per-packet attributes vary from packet to packet. For example,

- Acknowledge Requested for the current frame (AckReq)
- Security Processing enabled for the current frame (SecEn)

These attributes must be shared between the originator and the recipient of the frame. Therefore, they must travel with the packet. Before sending a frame, the originator MCU applies the desired attributes by configuring the respective frame control bits (for example, AckReq, SecEn) in the MAC header of the frame. When the send operation is triggered, the sending device checks these attributes and adapts its (frame processing and sending) behavior accordingly. The receiver device does the same on reception.

4.3.3 PER-NODE CONFIGURATION

It applies to specific nodes in the network, having a specific role. The auto-repeater functionality (in proprietary MAC-mode) is a typical example. Another case is how a node filters frames. A sniffer node should have different configuration in this respect than an ordinary node. Since the sniffer must not send acknowledge, that configuration may also be different.

4.4 Features Overview

The device supports two framing modes:

- IEEE 802-15.4 standard compliant (**Section 5.0 “IEEE 802.15.4™ Compliant Frame Format and Frame Processing”**) format
- Proprietary format (**Section 6.0 “Proprietary Frame Format and Frame Processing”**)

Hardware support is provided for both the features, but a network should only use one of them in all the nodes. (A compromise is offered by bridging, described in **Section 8.0 “Bridging”**).

For the discussion it is helpful to distinguish between “Protocol Agnostic” and “Protocol Dependent”.

Configuration Options:

- The availability and configuration format of “Protocol Dependent” options are conditioned on the selected framing protocol, i. e., whether IEEE 802.15.4-compliant or proprietary network operation is required.
- In contrast, the availability, behavior and configuration format of other options are “Protocol Agnostic” from a device point of view, that means that the configuration occurs similarly for framing protocol.

All “Protocol Agnostic” options could be freely combined with any of the “protocol-dependent” configurations, as far the device constrains it. Nevertheless, to comply with the IEEE 802.15.4 protocol, the constraints specified by the standard must be respected (see Table 4-2).

Figure 4-5 lists the higher level (MAC-layer) configuration features.

- FCS method: The 2-byte long CRC sequence adopted by IEEE 802-15.4 is supported from hardware. This should be adequate for most applications. In the contrary case, the CRC appending and checking can be disabled by CRCSZ = `0`. If CRCSZ = `0` then AUTOACKEN = `0` and RXFILTER = `0x00` is required. CRCSZ = `1` is assumed in the discussion.
- CSMA is described in **Section 4.11 “Carrier Sense Multiple Access-Collision Avoidance (CSMA-CA)”**, and only requires Packet-Mode.
- Automatic Acknowledgement Reception and Sending is configured as specified in **Section 4.12 “Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)”**, **Section 4.14 “Acknowledge Sending by Recipient”** and **Section 4.15 “Acknowledge Reception by Originator”**.

- In both framing configurations, the device offers support for: frame parsing, frame filtering, frame types, addressing modes applicable to multi-cast and uni-cast frames and security processing. Standard mode operation is described in **Section 5.0 "IEEE 802.15.4™ Compliant Frame Format and Frame Processing"**. Proprietary mode is described in **Section 6.0 "Proprietary Frame Format and Frame Processing"** through **Section 7.0 "Advanced Link Behavior in Proprietary Packet Mode"**.
- Link agility (**Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"**), bridging, auto-repeater (**Section 7.3 "Auto-Repeater"**) modes are only available in proprietary modes.

Table 4-1 lists a summary of possible node behaviors and node types. The focus of **Section 5.0 "IEEE 802.15.4™ Compliant Frame Format and Frame Processing"** is the general processing of IEEE 802.15.4-compliant and proprietary-format non-streaming frames, when the node is non-streaming configured in packet mode. Differences to this behavior are specified for the other scenarios in the respective sections.

FIGURE 4-5: MAC-LAYER CONFIGURATION OVERVIEW

COMMUNICATION ASPECTS	AVAILABLE OPTIONS	PER-PACKET or PER-NODE or GLOBAL?
PROTOCOL AGNOSTIC:		
Frame Error Detection	Trailer FCS by HW: yes / no?	Global option (typically, but not enforced)
Link Reliability	Acknowledge Request: yes / no? (if yes, # of retransmissions?)	Per-packet option
	Automatic Ack response: yes / no?	Per-Node option
Multiple Access	CSMA: Yes / No?	Per-packet option
PROTOCOL DEPENDENT:		
Frame Parsing,	IEEE 802.15.4 vs. Proprietary ?	Global option (except for "bridging")
Frame Filtering	Filters by validity, type, address.	Per-Node option
Frame Type	Type: Data / Cmd / Ack / Beacon… ?	Per- packet option
Multi-cast frames	Broadcast / Unicast Destination?	Per- packet option
Address Format	Dest. Address / Src. Address format?	Per-packet – in IEEE 802.15.14 Global – in Proprietary mode
MAC-layer Security	Privacy: yes/no? Frame authenticity: yes/no, MIC-tag size?	Per-packet enabling option
NWK-layer Security	Privacy: yes/no? Frame authenticity: yes/no, MIC-tag size?	Per-packet – in Proprietary mode
PROPRIETARY MODE ONLY:		
Link Agility	Air-Data Rate Adaptation: Yes/No? Adapt channel between TX/RX?	Per-packet option
Buffer Handling	Packet vs. Streaming Buffer Mode	Per-packet option
Auto-Repeater	Auto-repeat Mode	per-packet & per-RX node option

TABLE 4-1: SUMMARY OF NODE CONFIGURATION OPTIONS

	NODE CONFIGURATION				
	Packet Mode			Propr. TX Stream	Propr. RX Stream
	IEEE 802.15.4™	Proprietary	Proprietary Repeater		
TRXMODE (00: Packet Mode)	00	00	00	10	01
FRMFMT (Std:0, Proprietary:1)	0	1	1	1	1
AUTORPTEN (Repeater Node:1)	0	0	1	0	0
FEATURE/FRAME	**NODE CAPABILITY**				
CSMAEN (CSMA enable:1)	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0	No TX
CRCSZ (CRC 2 bytes: 1, none: 0)	1 (or 0)	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 or 1
AUTOACKEN (Auto-ACK enable:1)(3)	0 or 1	0 or 1	0 (or 1(1))	0	0, ignore 1
Retransmission capability	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Buffer Handling	1 RX, 1 TX	1 RX, 1 TX	2 TRX	2 TX	2 RX
With IEEE 802.15.4 Frames, capability to:	TX, RX	RX (TX)(4) (bridging)	discard	n/a	discard
With Proprietary non-Streaming Type of Frames (Repeat:0/1), capability to:	discard	TX, RX	Repeat if Repeat = 1	n/a	discard
With Proprietary Streaming Type of Frames, capability to:	discard	RX (sets on RX-Streaming)	discard	TX	RX
Security Processing	Available	Available	None	available but impractical	
Channel Agility Support for ACK-ing	No	Yes	n/a	n/a	n/a
PHY-features	Same for all				
Available Data Rates	All(2)	All	All	All	All
On-the-fly receiver rate adaptation	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
DSSS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note 1: Proprietary frames requesting both Acknowledge and repeat are not recommended if any of the repeaters has AUTOACKEN = 0, and vice versa. If all are set, it may cause issues.

2: Although 250 kbps is the only data rate that ensures compliance to the IEEE 802.15.4 standard, however as an extension, the other data rates can also be used with the standard MAC format, which may be easier to integrate with the legacy software.

3: CRCSZ = 0 has not practical use in standard-format mode. If CRCSZ = 0 then AUTOACKEN = 0 and RXFILTER = 0x00 is required.

4: Acknowledge sending is solved. To send a frame, the transmitter changes FRMFMT for the sending.

REGISTER 4-1: MACCON1 (MAC CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W-00	R/W-001	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
TRXMODE<1:0>	ADDRSZ<2:0>	CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **TRXMODE<1:0>:** TX/RX Mode Select Field bits

11 = Reserved

10 = TX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet transmission. When issuing TRX-MODE = 10, RXEN is cleared. SPI addresses 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. Access to 0x37F through 0x383 has non-defined effect.

01 = RX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet reception. When issuing TRX-MODE = 01, TXST and TXENC/RXDEC bits are cleared and RXEN is set. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. In this mode, Proprietary mode packets other than streaming type are automatically discarded. Access to 0x200 through 0x283 has non-defined effect.

00 = Packet mode. In this mode, Buffer 1 is used as a transmit and Buffer 2 is used as a receive packet buffer. SPI addresses from 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 2. TRXMODE = 00 is mandatory when FRMFMT = 0.

bit 5-3 **ADDRSZ<2:0>:** Source/Destination Address Size Field bits(1, 2)

The size of the Source and Destination addresses for Proprietary packet. Note that this field has no effect on the processing IEEE 802.15.4 frames.

111 = 8 octets
110 = 7 octets
101 = 6 octets
100 = 5 octets
011 = 4 octets
010 = 3 octets
001 = 2 octets
000 = 1 octet

bit 2 **CRCSZ:** CRC Size bit

This bit indicates the size of the CRC field in each packet.

1 = 2 octets
0 = 0 octet

bit 1 **FRMFMT:** MAC Frame Format Adopted by the Network bit(3)

This bit determines the frame format used in the network.

1 = Proprietary
0 = IEEE 802.15.4 standard compliant

bit 0 **SECFLAGOVR:** Security Flag Override bit

The user can override security flags used in the CCM-CTR, CBC-MAC and CCM operation, otherwise the device will use the standard (2003/2006) definition.

Note 1: Zero-length address occurs when the corresponding DAddrPrsnt/SAddrPrsnt bits of the packet frame control field are set to '0'.

2: ADDRSZ field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

3: FRMFMT field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set. In Debug mode, this register bit is used to determine the frame format for both Tx/Rx frame in the packet buffers.

4.5 Protocol Selection and Constraints

Applications typically fall into two categories:

- Category 1: Standard compliant operation is required exclusively
- Category 2: Standard compliant operation is not required, capability to form a gateway to standard network is sufficient:
  - Green-field development. Proprietary MAC framing is optimal.
  - Legacy software is better served by applying the standard MAC-frame format, although the network does not need to use IEEE 802.15.4 standard modulation formats over the air.

In category 1, the Proprietary Features are not used. The constraints listed in Table 4-2 shall be applied. A significant limitation is that IEEE 802.15.4 allows using a single air data rate, 250 kbps, only.

In category 2, these constraints are relieved, and the network may either adopt the proprietary (FRMFMT = 1) or the IEEE 802.15.4 MAC (FRMFMT = 0) frame formats as it fits better with the conditions. In either options, the network can use all the air data rates. A gateway to a standard network can be formed by bridging (see **Section 8.0 "Bridging"**). The Physical layer configuration is described in **Section 9.0 "Physical layer Functions"**.

TABLE 4-2: CONSTRAINTS IMPOSED BY THE IEEE 802.15.4™ STANDARD

Parameter Description	Register Field	Default on Reset	IEEE 802.15.4™ constraint/recommendation
Frame Format	FRMFMT	0	0 (std. frame format)
Buffer Handling	TRXMODE	00	00 (packet mode)
Sender Data Rate	DR<2:0>	011	011 (TX 250 kbps)
Receiver Data Rate Reject Filter (otherwise data rate is adapted on-the-fly, per-frame)	RATECON<7:2>	000000 (all enabled)	111101 (only enable: RX 250 kbps, SFD = 0xA7)
FCS (CRC) size (0 or 2 bytes)	CRCSZ	1	1 (2 byte CRC appended)
Frame rejection on CRC mismatch	CRCREJ	1	1 (CRC match enforced)
Frame rejection filter	RXFILTER<7:0>	0x7F	0x40 (frame rejection on CRC mismatch only)
Duplicate Rejection	IDENTREJ	0	1 (discard duplicates)
Automatic Acknowledge Handling (send/ receive)	AUTOACKEN	0	1 (Auto ACK enabled)
Base time units applied by TXACKWAIT and RXACKWAIT	BASETM<4:0>	00010 (2 µs)	10000 (should be a divisor of 16 µs)
Wait duration (in base units) before Acknowledge sending (by the data frame recipient)	RXACK-WAIT<7:0>	0x60	0x0C (shall be >= 192 µs)
Time-out duration (in base units) for Acknowledge reception (by the data originator)	TXACKTO<7:0>	0x80 (256 µs)	0x36 (shall be >= 864 µs)
CSMA medium access enabled	CSMAEN	1	1 (CSMA enabled)
CCA Mode (energy vs. carrier)	CCAMODE(1)	01	01 (4 options allowed)
CCA Measurement Duration	CCALEN(1)	01	10 (128 µs)
CCA Energy Threshold	EDthreshold(1)	0x32 (-88 dBm)	0x46 (-78 dBm; shall be <-75 dBm
Energy Detect Mode (1: 128 us, 0: variable duration)	EDMODE(1)	0	0 (EDLEN applies)
Energy Detect Duration	EDLEN(1)	0xE	0xE (15.360 ms; shall be repeated multiple times)

Note 1: For more information on Physical layer configuration, refer to **Section 9.0 "Physical layer Functions"**.

Note: "Proprietary" is not equivalent to "full-custom". The LENGTH field and Frame Control Field should be used as described. (The transmitter processing of the FrameCtrl.SecEn bit cannot be disabled.) The payload portion can still carry customized management information that is processed in software. It is recommended that FRMFMT = 1 be used with NSTDREJ = 1 if a gateway is not required.

4.6 Frame-On-Air/Air Data Rate

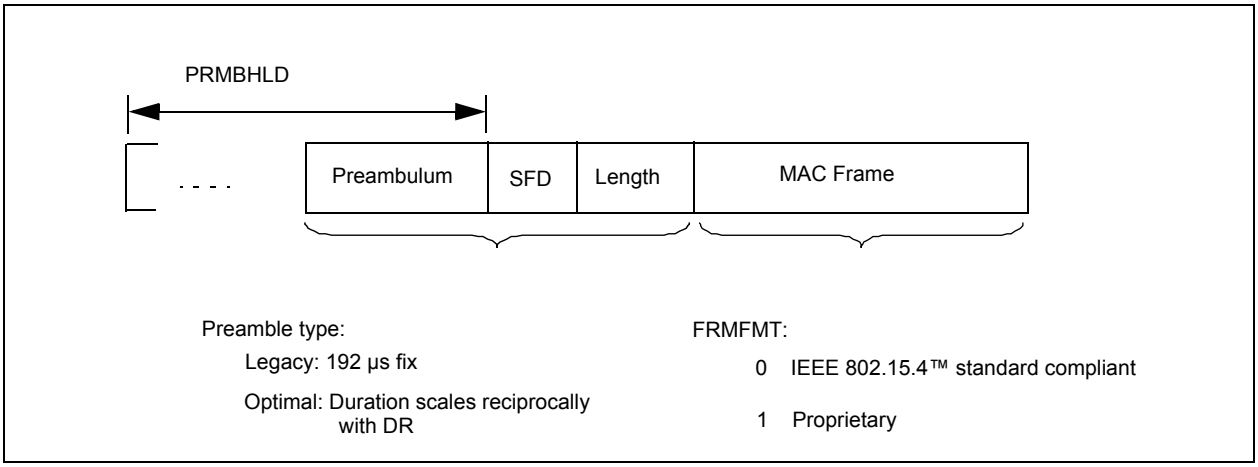
In the Originator of the frame FRMFMT and DR<2:0> select the air data rate and the frame format. The preamble can be hold out indefinitely by PRMBHLD bit. For more information on register definitions, refer to Register 4-2.

The recipient of the frame can receive the frame formats selected by FRMFMT and RATECON<7:2>.

Acknowledge is sent by the Recipient using the same frame format as the acknowledged frame (except for the agility described at the end of **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"**). The Originator must set RATECON<7:2> adequately to receive the ACK frame.

RATECON<1> selects between Legacy and Optimal PHY frame format. This can be set independently from the rate, or the MAC protocol as far the MAC operation is concerned.

FIGURE 4-6: FRAME-ON-AIR/AIR DATA RATE



REGISTER 4-2: RATECON (RATE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **DIS2000:** Disable 2 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 2 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 6 **DIS1000:** Disable 1 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 1 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 5 **DIS500:** Disable 500 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 500 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 4 **DIS250:** Disable 250 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with non-standard-compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 3 **DISSTD:** Disable IEEE 802.15.4 compliant Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with IEEE 802.15.4 compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 2 **DIS125:** Disable 125 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 125 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 1 **OPTIMAL:** Optimized Preamble Selection bit

When this bit is set, then optimized preamble is used instead of legacy.

1 = Optimized preamble
0 = Legacy preamble

bit 0 **PSAV:** Power-Save Mode Selection bit

When this bit is set, frame detection is dependent on the RSSI signal, and the receive signal processor is turned on when a sudden and significant increase (PSAVTHR<3:0>) is detected in the signal strength or the signal strength is above an absolute level (DESENSTHR<3:0>).

1 = Power-Save mode
0 = Hi-Sensitivity mode

REGISTER 4-3: MACCON1 (MAC CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W-00	R/W-001	R/W-1	R/W-0	R/W-0
TRXMODE<1:0>	ADDRSZ<2:0>	CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
bit 7				bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-6 **TRXMODE<1:0>:** TX/RX Mode Select Field bits

11 = Reserved
10 = TX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet transmission. When issuing TRXMODE = 10, RXEN is cleared. SPI addresses 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. Access to 0x37F through 0x383 has non-defined effect.
01 = RX-Streaming mode. In this mode both buffers are used for packet reception. When issuing TRX MODE = 01, TXST and TXENC/RXDEC bits are cleared and RXEN is set. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 1 or Buffer 2 in alternation. In this mode, Proprietary mode packets other than streaming type are automatically discarded. Access to 0x200 through 0x283 has non-defined effect.
00 = Packet mode. In this mode, Buffer 1 is used as a Transmit while Buffer 2 as a Receive packet buffer. SPI addresses from 0x200 to 0x27F access Buffer 1. SPI addresses 0x300 to 0x383 access Buffer 2. TRXMODE = 00 is mandatory when FRMFMT = 0.

bit 5-3 **ADDRSZ<2:0>:** Source/Destination Address Size Fields bits(1, 2)

The size of the Source and Destination addresses for Proprietary packet. Note that this field has no effect on the processing IEEE 802.15.4 frames.
111 = 8 octets
110 = 7 octets
101 = 6 octets
100 = 5 octets
011 = 4 octets
010 = 3 octets
001 = 2 octets
000 = 1 octet

bit 2 **CRCSZ:** CRC Size bit

This bit indicates the size of the CRC field in each packet.
1 = 2 octets
0 = 0 octet

bit 1 **FRMFMT:** MAC frame format bit adopted by the network bit(3)

This bit determines the frame format used in the network.

1 = Proprietary
0 = IEEE 802.15.4 standard compliant.

bit 0 **SECFLAGOVR:** Security Flag Override bit

The user can override security flags used in the CCM-CTR, CBC-MAC and CCM operations, otherwise the device will use the standard (2003/2006) definition.

Note 1: Zero-length address occurs when the corresponding DAddrPrsnt/SAddrPrsnt bits of the packet frame control field are set to '0'.

2: ADDRSZ field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

3: FRMFMT field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set. In Debug mode, this register bit is used to determine the frame format for both Tx/Rx frame in the packet buffers.

REGISTER 4-4: BBCON (BASEBAND CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-11	R/W-0	R/W-001
RNDMOD	AFCOVR	RXGAIN<1:0>	PRMBHOLD	PRMBSZ<2:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend:	W = Writable bit	R = Readable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **RNDMOD:** Random Modulation bit

By setting this bit, the transmitter will randomly transmit DSSS symbols or MSK chips if PRMBHOLD bit is set. The purpose of this register is only for testing.

bit 6 **AFCOVR:** AFC Override bit

By setting this bit, receiver will use CFOMEAS register as the CFO in reception.

bit 5-4 **RXGAIN<1:0>:** Receiver Gain Register Field bits

By setting this bit, the AGC operation can be inhibited in the receiver and the receiver radio gain configuration can be selected between three different gain levels. Encoding:

11 = AGC operation is enabled (default value)
10 = High gain
01 = Middle gain
00 = Low gain

This feature can be used for test and streaming purpose. To reduce the required interframe-gap, the RXGAIN should be set to one of the fixed gain options when the MAC is in Streaming mode.

bit 3 **PRMBHOLD:** Preamble Hold Enable bit

Effect: Appends extra bytes to the transmitted preamble in endless repetition until it is cleared.

Details: The hardware checks this bit during transmission before finishing the preamble. The appropriate preamble byte and modulation format is applied as determined by DR<2:0> and the register OPTIMAL. When this flag is released the transmission of the current preamble byte is completed followed by transmitting the LENGTH field and the payload.

1 = Enable endless preamble repetition
0 = Disable/stop endless preamble repetition

bit 2-0 **PRMBSZ<2:0>:** Preamble Size Adjustment Field bits

Allows adjusting the transmitted preamble length when OPTIMAL = 1. Encoding:

500 kbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<2> + 4) units, where unit = 16 µs (1 octet at 500 kbps)

1 Mbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<1:0> + 8) units, where unit = 4 µs (1 octet at 2 Mbps)

2 Mbps preamble length = (PRMBSZ<1:0> + 8) units, where unit = 4 µs (1 octet at 2 Mbps)

Legacy frames and 125/250 kbps optimized frames are not affected by this register field.

4.7 Security Suites

MRF24XA provides extensive hardware support for security suites defined in 802.15.4-2003/2006 standard. The security suites are based on the AES-128 block cipher transformation. Block ciphers are ciphers that work on a plaintext block of a fixed length to produce a ciphertext block of the same length. Given a particular Key (K), there is a 1-to-1 correspondence between the Plaintext Block (P) and the Ciphertext Block (C).

- Encryption operation: $C_i = E_K(P_i)$

  Ciphertext block (i) is produced by Encrypting Plaintext block (i) using key K.

- Decryption operation: $P_i = D_K(C_i)$

  Plaintext block (i) is produced by Decrypting Ciphertext block (i) using key K.

4.7.1 ELECTRONIC CODE BOOK MODE (ECB)

The simple usage of the block cipher is known as ECB mode. There are several problems with simply using a block cipher in ECB mode to encrypt data. Because each plaintext block is encrypted to the same ciphertext block every time, it is possible to associate the ciphertext block with an event without ever knowing the plaintext block itself. To trigger the event, user can resend the ciphertext block, a process known as Replay Attack. In addition, most block cipher algorithms in ECB mode do nothing to scramble repetitive data, making the plaintext block reversible from the ciphertext block.

4.7.2 COUNTER MODE (CTR)

In CTR mode, each chipertext block is produced by XOR'ing, the plaintext block with the encrypted version of a counter input. The initial value of the counter serves as the Initialization Vector (IV) for the message block, and may be changed for each message block. Although the term “counter” is used, this does not mandate the use of a true counter. An easy-to-compute function which is practically non-repeating (at least for a long time) may be used. CTR mode may be 100% parallelized for both encryption and decryption.

802.15.4-2003 defines CTR mode as follows:

$CTR_0 = 0$

Loop on each 16 byte block of plaintext

$C_i = P_i \text{ xor } E_K(\{ENCFLAGS, SECNONCE, CTR_i\})$

$CTR_{i+1} = CTR_i + 1$

End

Where, *ENCFLAGS* is defined by the standard (0x82), *SECNONCE* is defined in the standards and CTRi is a 2 byte block counter. If the last block of the plaintext is not 16 byte, it is zero padded and only the required number of MSB bytes is used in the XOR operation. The host can override ENCFLAGS field by enabling SECFLAGOVR bit in MACCON1 register, and setup the new flags through SECENCFLAG register. SECNONCE register can be overwritten anytime by the host through SECNONCE1..13 registers.

802.15.4-2006 does not define CTR mode.

4.7.3 CIPHER BLOCK CHAINING MODE (CBC)

In CBC mode, each plaintext block is XOR’ed with the result of the previous block encryption operation before being encrypted. In this way all plaintext blocks depend on the previous block, making it difficult to remove, add or change individual blocks without detection. In addition, the encryption for the first block is performed using XOR of the plaintext block and an Initial Value (IV). This initial value can be changed for each message, making it more resistant to Replay Attacks.

MRF24XA does not support CBC mode.

4.7.4 CIPHER BLOCK CHAINING MESSAGE AUTHENTICATION CODE MODE (CBC-MAC)

A CBC-MAC protects the authenticity of a message, and therefore implicitly its integrity. The algorithm takes the variable length input message and a secret key, and produces a MIC TAG (the terms MIC and MAC are often used interchangeably). Any change to the content of the message will result in a change of the MIC tag, thereby guaranteeing the integrity of the message. As the same message with a different secret key will also produce a different MIC tag, a MAC mode also provides protection of authenticity.

802.15.4-2003 defines CBC-MAC mode as follows:

$P = \{LENGTH, MACHDR, MACPAYLOAD\}$

$O_1 = E_K(P_1)$

Loop on each 16 byte block of plaintext

$O_i = E_K(P_i \text{ xor } O_{i-1})$

End

MICTAG is the leftmost M bit of O_{end}

Where *LENGTH* is the number of bytes to be authenticated (MAC header and payload).

802.15.4-2006 does not define CBC-MAC mode.

4.7.5 AUTHENTICATE AND ENCRYPT BLOCK CIPHER MODE (CCM*)

This mode is a combination of CTR mode (encryption) and CBC-MAC mode (authentication). Initially, CBC-MAC is applied to compute the MIC tag. CTR mode (encryption) is performed only on a selected portion of the authenticated message and the MIC tag. Different combination of authentication and encryption can be formed.

802.15.4-2003/2006 defines CCM* mode as follows:

P = *{AUTHENTICATION FLAG, NONCE, LENGTH, MACHEADER, MACPAYLOAD}*

$O_1 = E_K(P_1)$

Loop on each 16 byte block of plaintext

$O_i = E_K(P_i \text{ xor } O_{i-1})$

End

MICTAG is the leftmost M bit of O_{end}

AUTHENTICATION FLAG: *Reserved || Adata || M || L*

4.8 Buffer Processing in Non-Secured Sending

General Frame processing, as shown in Figure 4-7, applies when AUTORPTEN = 0. Unsecured frame (SecEn = 0) is not an Acknowledgement and CRCSZ = 1. Acknowledgement is transmitted or received by software (AUTOACKEN = 0) and CRCSZ = 1 (ACK may contain piggyback data in the payload, at the discretion of the host software).

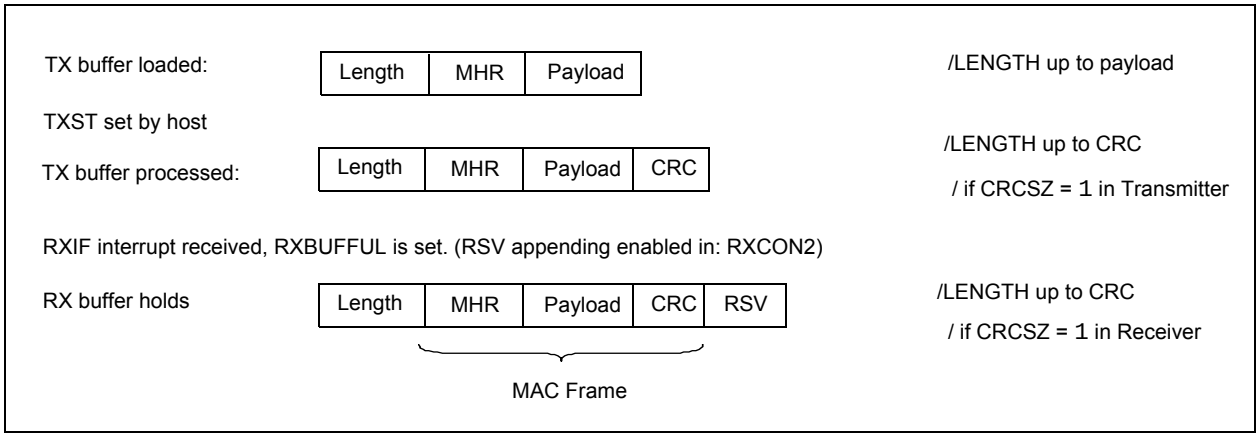
In Figure 4-7, note the following:

- Transmit buffer is the buffer starting at 0x200, whereas the Receive Buffer is the buffer starting at address 0x300 (this also applies for Streaming mode).
- In the Transmit Buffer FCS is appended automatically to the frame, and the LENGTH field is also incremented automatically.
- The Receive buffer holds the FCS appended frame, and the according LENGTH. RSV is appended to the frame. Note the ordering of the RSV fields. The LENGTH field is not affected by RSV appending.

The following cases are not described in this data sheet:

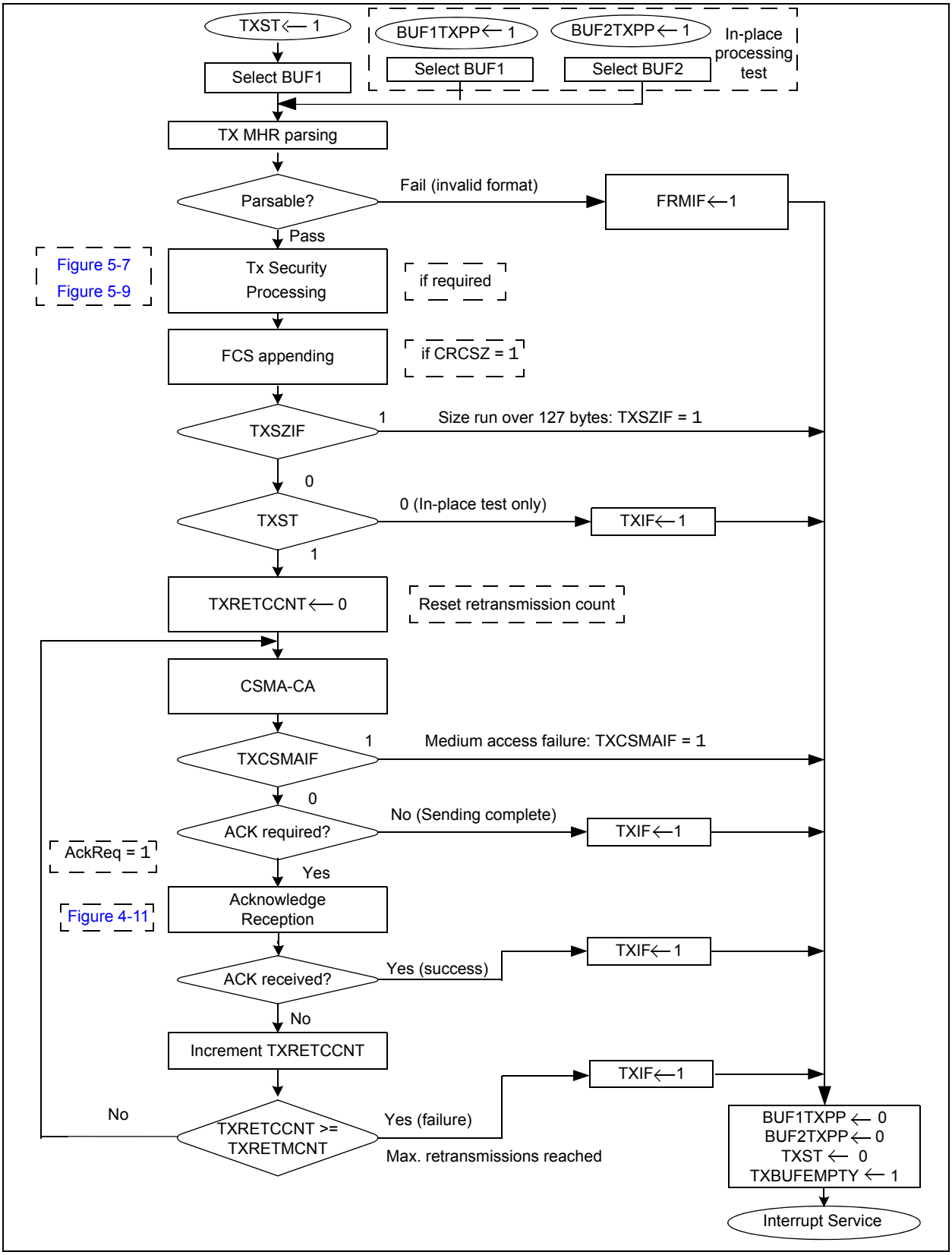
- Processing of secured frames (SecEn = 1) is presented in **Section 5.3 "Security Material"**.
- When AckReq = 1 (implying TXRXMODE = 00, CRCSZ = 1), then the Acknowledge frame is generated or accepted on-the-fly: without writing or reading the buffers (If CRCSZ = 0 then the CRC appending does not take place and Acknowledge is always processed by software: AUTOACKEN = 0).
- Repeater Mode is described in **Section 7.3 "Auto-Repeater"**.

FIGURE 4-7: GENERAL FRAME PROCESSING



4.9 Frame Transmission in Packet Mode

FIGURE 4-8: TRANSMITTER PROCESSING IN PACKET MODE



REGISTER 4-5: TXCON (TRANSMIT CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/HS/HC-1	R/W-1	R/W-011
TXST	DTSM	TXENC	TXBUFEMPTY	CSMAEN	DR<2:0>
bit 7					bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXST:** Transmit Start bit

1 = Starts the transmission of the next TX packet[1, 2].
0 = Termination of current TX operation, which may result in the transmission of an incomplete packet

Hardware clear:

- After the packet has been successfully transmitted (including all attempted re-transmissions, if any) this bit will be cleared by hardware and TXIF and IDLEIF are set.
- If the packet transmission fails due to a CSMA failure, then this bit will be cleared, and TXCSMAIF is set.
- If Acknowledge was requested (AckReq bit field in the transmitted frame is set) and not received after the configured number of retransmissions (TXRETMCNT), then TXST bit will be cleared and a TXACKIF is set.
- In TX-Streaming mode (TRXMODE), TXST can be set even when it is already set, resulting in a posted start. When the current TX operation completes, the posted start will start immediately afterwards. Clearing of the TXST bit clears both the current and the posted (pending) TX starts. TXOVFIF is set when TXST = 1, a posted start is present and a Host Controller write to the packet buffer occurs. Outside of TX-Streaming mode, writes to TXST when TXST is already set will be ignored.

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- When transmitting a packet in Packet mode or in TX-Streaming mode
- When waiting for an ACK packet after a transmission
- During the CSMA CA algorithm
- When transmitting a repeated frame

This field can be read at any time to determine if the TX operation is in progress.

bit 6 **DTSM:** Do Not Touch Security Material bits[2]

1 = Device will not change the security material configured by the host MCU
0 = Device will try to configure the security material related registers

The concerned registers are SECNONCE, SECHDRINDX, SECPAYINDX and SECENDINDX. These registers should be filled by the MCU.

bit 5 **TXENC:** TX Encryption

Setting this bit will start TX security processing (authentication and/or encryption) of the packet in the buffer that was last written to. TXENC is cleared and TXENCIF is set when the processing is complete. TXENC should be issued when NWK layer security needs to be processed. 802.15.4-2003/2006 MAC layer security operation is automatically performed by setting TXST bit. This field should not be modified while TXST is set.

Note 1: Transmission may include automatic security processing, CRC appending, CSMA-CA channel access, Acknowledge reception and retransmissions depending on the register configuration and the frame control field of the frame to be transmitted.

2: By setting TXST bit in either Sleep/RFOFF state, device will transit to TX state for packet transmission.

REGISTER 4-5: TXCON (TRANSMIT CONTROL REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 4 **TXBUFEMPTY:** TX Buffer Empty bit

TXBUFEMPTY = 1 indicates that the host MCU can safely start writing a new frame to the buffer without overwriting any content that would be in use. Writing a single byte to the buffer will cause this bit to be cleared. TXBUFEMPTY = 0 does not prevent the host from writing further bytes to the buffer. TXBUFEMPTY is set by the device when transmission is complete.

1 = MCU can safely start writing a new frame to the buffer
0 = Buffer is full, or being written to

When TRXMODE = 00:

(PACKET) mode is configured then TXBUFEMPTY is set at the same time as TXST is cleared. An interrupt is also generated. Therefore, this bit provides no extra information.

When TRXMODE = 10:

(TXSTREAMING) mode is configured then TXBUFEMPTY is set at the same time as one of the buffers becomes free, while TXST may be set. Therefore, TXBUFEMPTY is used by the host MCU to ensure that it can start loading the next frame to the buffers without overwriting a packet being sent (TXOVFIF).

bit 3 **CSMAEN:** CSMA-CA Enable bit

This bit enables CSMA-CA algorithm before transmission.

1 = CSMA-CA enabled
0 = CSMA-CA disabled

bit 2-0 **DR<2:0>:** Transmit Data Rate Field bits

111 = Reserved
110 = 2 Mbps
101 = 1 Mbps
100 = 500 kbps
011 = 250 kbps
010 = 125 kbps
001 = Reserved
000 = Reserved

When transmitting an Auto-ACK frame with Adaptive Data Rate in response to a received frame, the data rate of the PHY is automatically determined by the AckDataRate field in the received frame, and not by this register field. In all other cases, this register field is used as the current PHY data rate when transmitting.

The data rate for all received frames is determined by the PHY, regardless of this register field and the Adaptive Data Rate configuration. Refer to Register 4-2 for more information.

Note 1: Transmission may include automatic security processing, CRC appending, CSMA-CA channel access, Acknowledge reception and retransmissions depending on the register configuration and the frame control field of the frame to be transmitted.

2: By setting TXST bit in either Sleep/RFOFF state, device will transit to TX state for packet transmission.

REGISTER 4-6: PIR2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 2)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXIF:** Transmission Done Interrupt Flag bit

The current TX operation (TXST) has been successfully completed. This event is not changed when a hardware generated ACK packet has been transmitted or when a packet has been repeated. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **TXENCIF:** Transmit Encoding Interrupt Flag bit

The TX packet was successfully encrypted and/or complemented with a Message Integrity Code (MIC). Set by the device after TXENC = 1, when TXENC is cleared. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **TXMAIF:** Transmitter Medium Access Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the medium is accessed, that is, when the first sample in the preamble is transmitted on air. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **TXACKIF:** Transmission Unacknowledged Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Acknowledge is not received after the configured maximum number of transmission retries RETXMCNT<3:0>, provided that the frame control field of the transmitted frame indicates AckReq = 1. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 3 **TXCSMAIF:** Transmitter CSMA Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when CSMA-CA finds the channel busy for BOMCNT<2:0> number of times, provided that CSMAEN = 1 is configured. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **TXSZIF:** Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag bit

Following TXST is set the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **TXOVFIF:** Transmitter Overflow Interrupt Flag bit

The Host Controller attempted to write a TX buffer that was not empty (TXBUFEMPTY = 0). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **FRMIF:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation).

REGISTER 4-7: PIR4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 4)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXSFDIF:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the last sample of the SFD field has been sent on the air. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXSFDIF:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the SFD field of the received frame is detected. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **ERRORIF:** General Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device, when malfunction state is reached.

bit 4 **WARNIF:** Warning Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when one of the following occurred:

- Battery voltage has dropped below the threshold given by BATMON<4:0>
- Resistor on pin 28 is missing or not connected well

bit 3 **EDCCAIF:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Energy-detect or CCA measurement is complete (following that the host MCU has set the EDST/CCAST bit to start the measurement and the device is clearing it in on completion).

Non-persistent. Cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **GPIO2IF:** GPIO2 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 1 **GPIO1IF:** GPIO1 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 0 **GPIO0IF:** GPIO0 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

4.10 Frame Reception in Packet Mode

FIGURE 4-9: RECEIVER OPERATION (IF AUTORPTEN = 0)

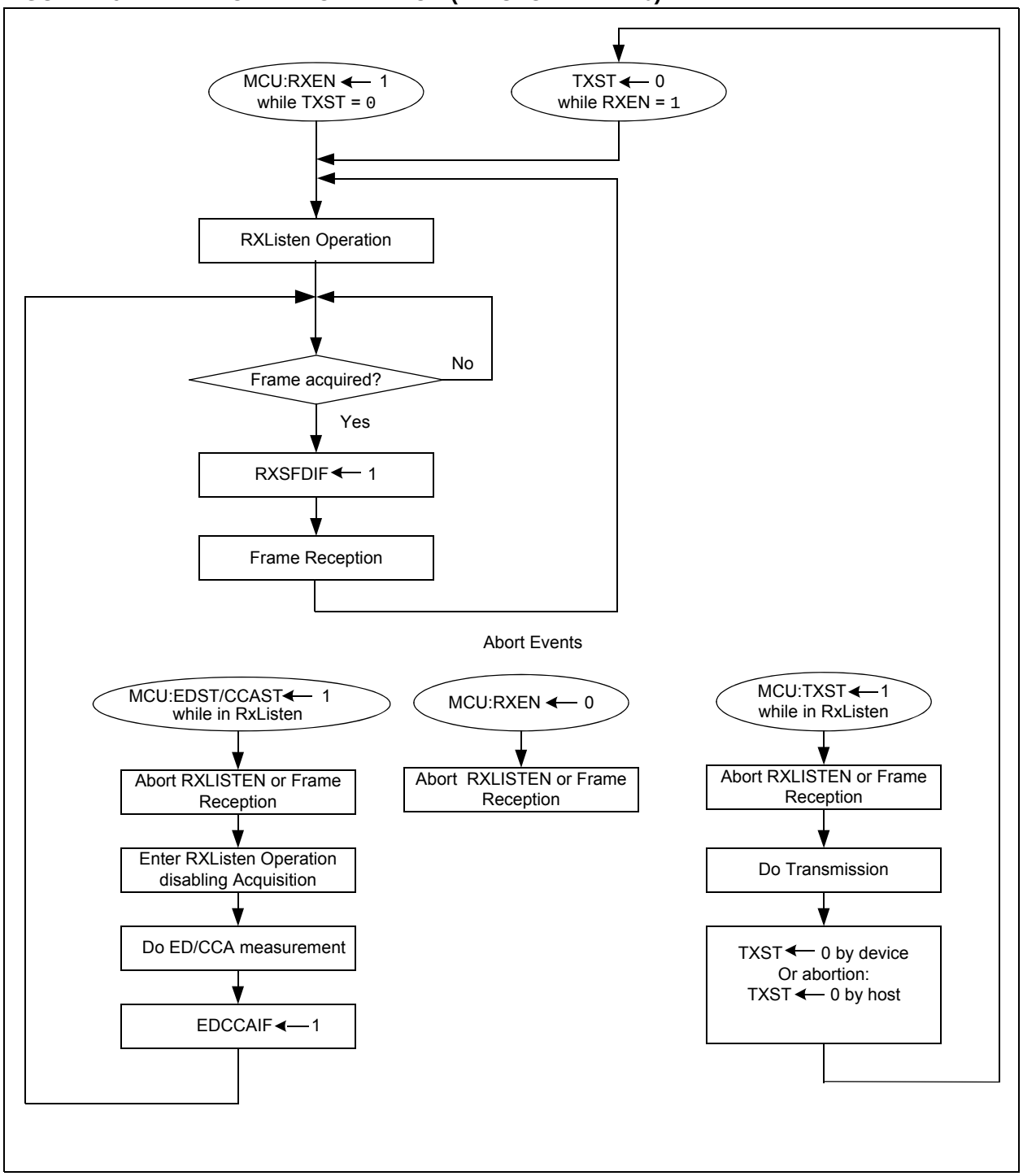
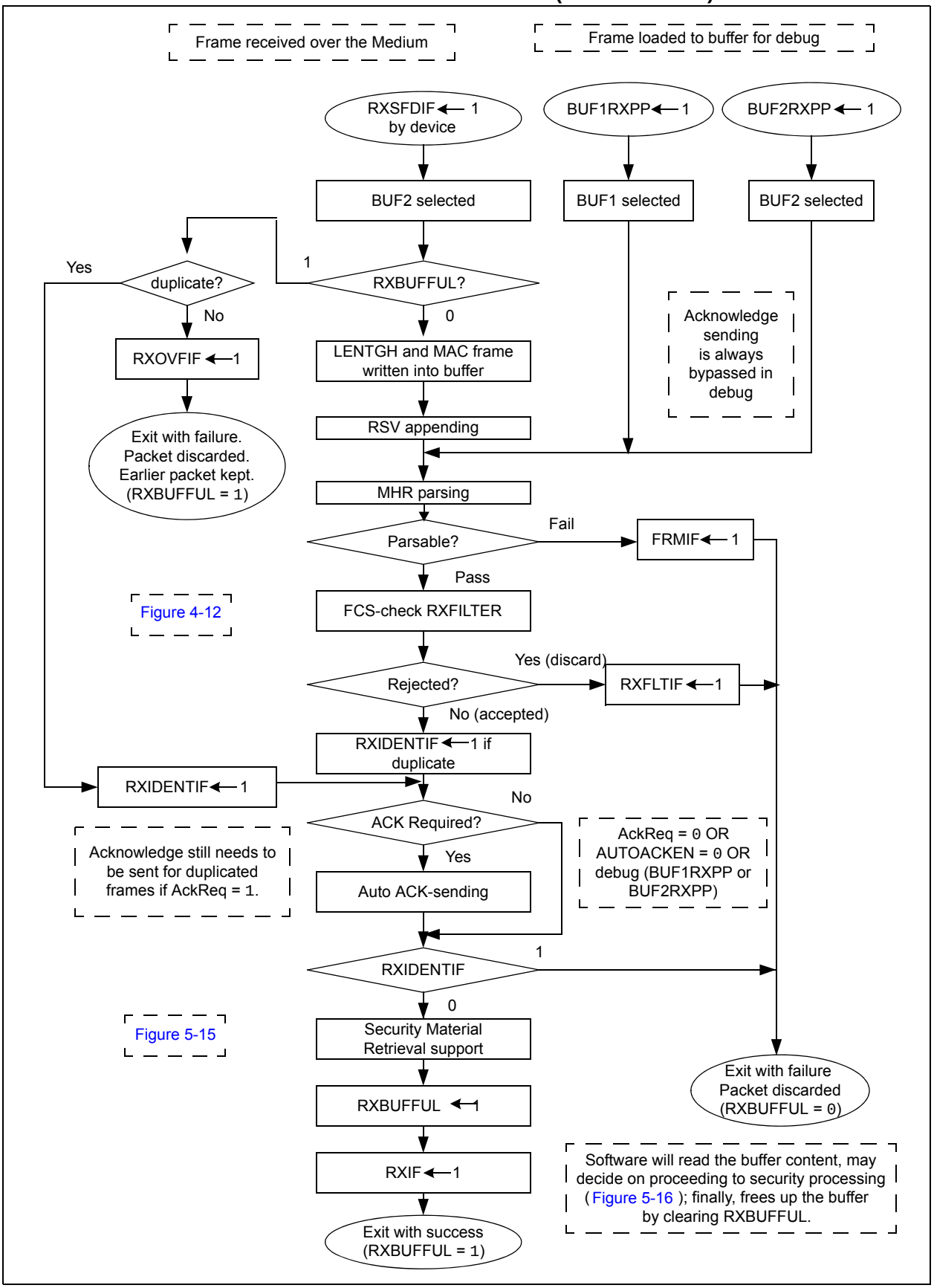


FIGURE 4-10: FRAME RECEPTION IN PACKET MODE (TRXMODE = 00)



REGISTER 4-8: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable Field bit

This bit Enables/Disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is currently being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled

0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode

Most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

The clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when needed, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

bit 6 **NOPA:** No Parsing bit

This bit will disable packet parsing. Only CRC will be checked if it is enabled. This feature is useful in Sniffer mode.

1 = Disable packet parsing

0 = Enable packet parsing

bit 5 **RXDEC:** RX Decryption bit

Setting this bit will start RX security processing (authentication and/or decryption) on the last received packet.

1 = RX security processing started/in process. RXDECIF or RXTAGIF is set.

0 = RX security processing inactive or complete

This bit will clear itself after RX decryption has completed.

bit 4 **RSVLQIEN:** Receive Status Vector LQI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured Link Quality is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append LQI field

0 = Do not append LQI field

bit 3 **RSVRSSIEN:** Receive Status Vector RSSI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured RSSI is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append RSSI field

0 = Do not append RSSI field

bit 2 **RSVCHDREN:** Receive Status Vector Channel/MAC Type/Data Rate Enable bit

If this bit is set, Channel, MAC type and Data Rate configurations used with the received frame are appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the encoding specified for CH<3:0>, FRMFMT and DR<2:0> (concatenated in this order when most significant bit (MSb) is first).

1 = Append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

0 = Do not append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

bit 1 **RSVCFOEN:** Receive Status Vector CFO Enable bit

If this bit is set, the estimated Carrier Frequency Offset of the received frame is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the same encoding as CFOMEAS register.

1 = Append CFO estimation

0 = Do not append estimated CFO

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 4-9: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **RXBUFFUL:** RX Buffer Full bit

Host MCU clears this bit to indicate that the RX packet has been processed. If this bit is not cleared before the next valid RX packet is detected (packet is not a duplicate, pass RX filter, and so on), then the device sets RXOVFIF and the buffer content is not modified, that is, RXBUFFUL = 1 locks write access by a new frame, meanwhile the host can both read and write to the buffer or perform security processing.

In TRXMODE = 00 (PACKET) mode:

1 = Receive buffer content is yet to be read by the host or processed, and cannot be overwritten by a new frame
0 = Receive buffer is free for receiving a new frame

In TRXMODE = 01 (RXSTREAMING) mode:

1 = Current buffer being read from the bus contains a valid RX Packet
0 = Current buffer being read from the bus is empty

bit 6 **IDENTREJ:** Reject Identical Packet bit

In Packet mode, if this bit is set and a received packet has the same Source address, Source PID and Sequence number as the last packet received RXIDENTIF is set and the packet is discarded.

This bit is used if a packet is received, an ACK is transmitted but the ACK is never received. The sender will re-send the TX packet. In this case, RXIF is not triggered for second time for the same packet, hence the second packet is ignored.

This is also used to repeat a packet, and the next repeater repeats the same packet back. User should ignore the packet.

1 = Any packet received with the same Source Address, Source PID and Sequence number as the last packet successfully received will be discarded and RXIDENTIF is set.
0 = Duplicated packets are processed further same as non-duplicated packets

bit 5 **ACKRXFP:** ACK RX Frame Pending bit

This read-only status bit reflects the value of the FrameCtrl (FramePend) bit in the last received 802.15.4 compatible ACK frame.

bit 4 **ACKTXFP:** ACK TX Frame Pending bit

The value of this bit is transmitted in the FrameCtrl (FramePend) bit slot when the MAC sends an ACK packet in 802.15.4 Compatibility mode.

bit 3 **AUTORPTEN:** Auto-Repeat Enable bit

If this bit is set, the MAC automatically transmits a packet whenever a packet is received, and its Repeat bit is set.

1 = Auto-Repeat feature is enabled
0 = Auto-Repeat feature is disabled

Note 1: ADPTCHEN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

2: ADPTDREN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

REGISTER 4-9: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 2 **AUTOACKEN:** Auto-Acknowledge Enable bit

If this bit is set, then the device will automatically transmit an ACK packet whenever a packet is received, and its AckReq bit is set.

1 = Automatic Acknowledge processing enabled
0 = Automatic Acknowledge processing disabled

bit 1 **ADPTCHEN:** Adaptive Channel Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC in Proprietary mode to set the transmitting channel for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the CH<3:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Channel feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Channel feature is disabled

This feature is also known as Channel Agility. Refer to **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"** for more information.

bit 0 **ADPTDREN:** Adaptive Data Rate Enable bit(2)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC in Proprietary mode to set the transmission data rate for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the DR<2:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is disabled

This feature is also known as Channel Agility. Refer to **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"** for more information.

Note 1: ADPTCHEN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

2: ADPTDREN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

REGISTER 4-10: PIR3 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 3)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
RXIF	RXDECIF	RXTAGIF	r	RXIDENTIF	RXFLTIF	RXOVFIF	STRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXIF:** Received Successful Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a frame has passed packet filtering and has been accepted (refer to Register 2-23). This interrupt flag is only set once for a packet and is not set when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission, (that is, sequence number matches with the previously received frame).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXDECIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Passed Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished without error. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **RXTAGIF:** Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished with error. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **RXIDENTIF:** Received Packet Identical Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the packet is the duplicate of a repeated transmission, (that is, sequence number, source address matches with the previously received frame). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **RXFLTIF:** Received Packet Filtered Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when a packet was received, but rejected by one or more RX Filters (refer to Register 2-23). Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 1 **RXOVFIF:** Receiver Overflow Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate that a packet was received, but all RX buffers were full. Consequently the packet was not received, but was discarded instead(1).

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 0 **STRMIF:** Receive Stream Time-out Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device to indicate that the duration specified in STRMTO has elapsed since the last received packet while in RX-Streaming mode, and the MAC clears the stored sequence number. Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

Note 1: In Packet-mode a single buffer is used for received frames, whereas in RX-Streaming mode both buffers are used for reception.

REGISTER 4-11: PIR4 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 4)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXSFDIF	RXSFDIF	ERRORIF	WARNIF	EDCCAIF	GPIO2IF	GPIO1IF	GPIO0IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXSFDIF:** Transmit SFD Sent Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the last sample of the SFD field has been sent on the air.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 6 **RXSFDIF:** Receive SFD Detected Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when the SFD field of the received frame is detected.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

bit 5 **ERRORIF:** General Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device, when malfunction state is reached.

bit 4 **WARNIF:** Warning Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when one of the following occurred:

- Battery voltage has dropped below the threshold given by BATMON<4:0>
- Resistor on pin 28 is missing or not connected well

bit 3 **EDCCAIF:** Energy Detect/CCA Done Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device when Energy-detect or CCA measurement is complete (following that the host MCU has set the EDST/CCAST bit to start the measurement and the device is clearing it in on completion).

Non-persistent. Cleared by SPI read.

bit 2 **GPIO2IF:** GPIO2 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 1 **GPIO1IF:** GPIO1 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

bit 0 **GPIO0IF:** GPIO0 Interrupt Flag bit

Set by the device if the GPIOMODE register is set to normal operation, the GPIO is enabled and configured to input and the level matches with the polarity.

REGISTER 4-12: PIR2 (PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REGISTER 2)

R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0	R/W/HS/HC-0
TXIF	TXENCIF	TXMAIF	TXACKIF	TXCSMAIF	TXSZIF	TXOVFIF	FRMIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-1 Out of scope

bit 0 **FRMIF:** Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag bit

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). For example, reserved values found in the MAC header fields.

Non-persistent, cleared by SPI read.

4.11 Carrier Sense Multiple Access-Collision Avoidance (CSMA-CA)

Carrier Sense Multiple Access-Collision Avoidance (CSMA-CA) is performed before transmitting a packet to increase the odds that the packet will be successfully received without interference from other transmitting devices nearby.

When enabled (CSMAEN = 1), CSMA-CS is performed automatically by the MAC, using the underlying Clear Channel Assessment (CCA) operation. CSMA-CA is performed only before transmitting a packet (excluding ACK packets automatically transmitted during Auto-Acknowledge) in Packet and Repeater mode.

4.11.1 CSMA-CA CONFIGURATION

CSMA-CA is enabled by setting the CSMAEN register bit. CSMA-CA is automatically executed when the TXST register bit is set, before the packet is transmitted. CSMA-CA is considered part of a transmission operation, and it is therefore aborted by clearing the TXST register bit, and not by clearing the RXEN register bit.

The following register bits are used in the configuration of CSMA-CA:

- CSMAEN
- BOMCNT<2:0>
- BOUNIT<7:0>
- MINBE<3:0>
- MAXBE<3:0>

4.11.2 CSMA-CA BACK-OFF ALGORITHM

1. Wait a random number of Basetime units between 0 and (2^{MINBE}-1) * BOUNIT<7:0>.

Note:	If MINBE = 0, the first iteration of the CSMA algorithm will perform a CCA operation immediately without any backoff time.

2. Perform a Clear Channel Assessment (CCA) operation.
3. If CCA fails, then wait for a random number of Basetime units between 0 and ($2^{(MINBE+1)}$-1) * BOUNIT<7:0>.
4. Repeat above two steps until CCA passes, incrementing the back-off exponent each time, until the maximum back-off time becomes (2^{MAXBE}-1) * BOUNIT<7:0>, or until the number of attempts is greater than BOMCNT<2:0>.
5. If CCA is failed, but the number of attempts is less than BOMCNT<2:0>, keep trying with a back-off time of (2^{MAXBE}-1) * BOUNIT<7:0> Basetime units until the number of attempts is greater than BOMCNT<2:0>, or CCA passes.
6. If CCA still fails, the TX CSMA Error event is generated.

An external LNA is automatically controlled by MRF24XA if it is enabled.

REGISTER 4-13: TMRCON (TIMER CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W-100	R/W-00010
BOMCNT<2:0>	BASETM<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-5 **BOMCNT<2:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Maximum Count Field bits

The maximum number of back-off attempts the CSMA-CA algorithm will attempt before declaring a channel access failure.

111 = Reserved
110 = Reserved
101 = 5 attempts
100 = 4 attempts
011 = 3 attempts
010 = 2 attempts
001 = 1 attempts
000 = 0 attempt

bit 4-0 **BASETM<4:0>:** Base time Field bits

The number of 1 µs clock cycles that a Base time unit represents in all register settings. Refer to **Section 4.1 "MAC Architecture"** for more information.

REGISTER 4-14: CSMABE (CSMA-CA BACK-OFF EXPONENT CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W-0101	R/W-0011
MAXBE<3:0>	MINBE<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **MAXBE<3:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Maximum Count Fields

The maximum value of the Back-off exponent (BE) is in the CSMA-CA algorithm. The back-off time is (2^{BE}-1) units.

1111 = Reserved
•
•
•
1001 = Reserved
1000 2^8-1 = 255 maximum units of back-off time
•
•
•
0000 2^0-1 = No back-off time

bit 3-0 **MINBE<3:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Minimum Count bit

The minimum value of the back-off exponent (BE) is in the CSMA-CA algorithm. The back-off time is (2^{BE}-1) units.

1111 = Reserved
•
•
•
1001 = Reserved
1000 2^8-1 = 255 maximum units of back-off time
•
•
•
0000 2^0-1 = No back-off time

REGISTER 4-15: BOUNIT (BACK-OFF TIME UNIT REGISTER)

R/W-10100000
BOUNIT<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **BOUNIT<7:0>:** CSMA-CA Back-off Period Unit Field bits

The number of Base time units for the basic back-off time unit used by CSMA-CA algorithm.

11111111 = 256 Base time units

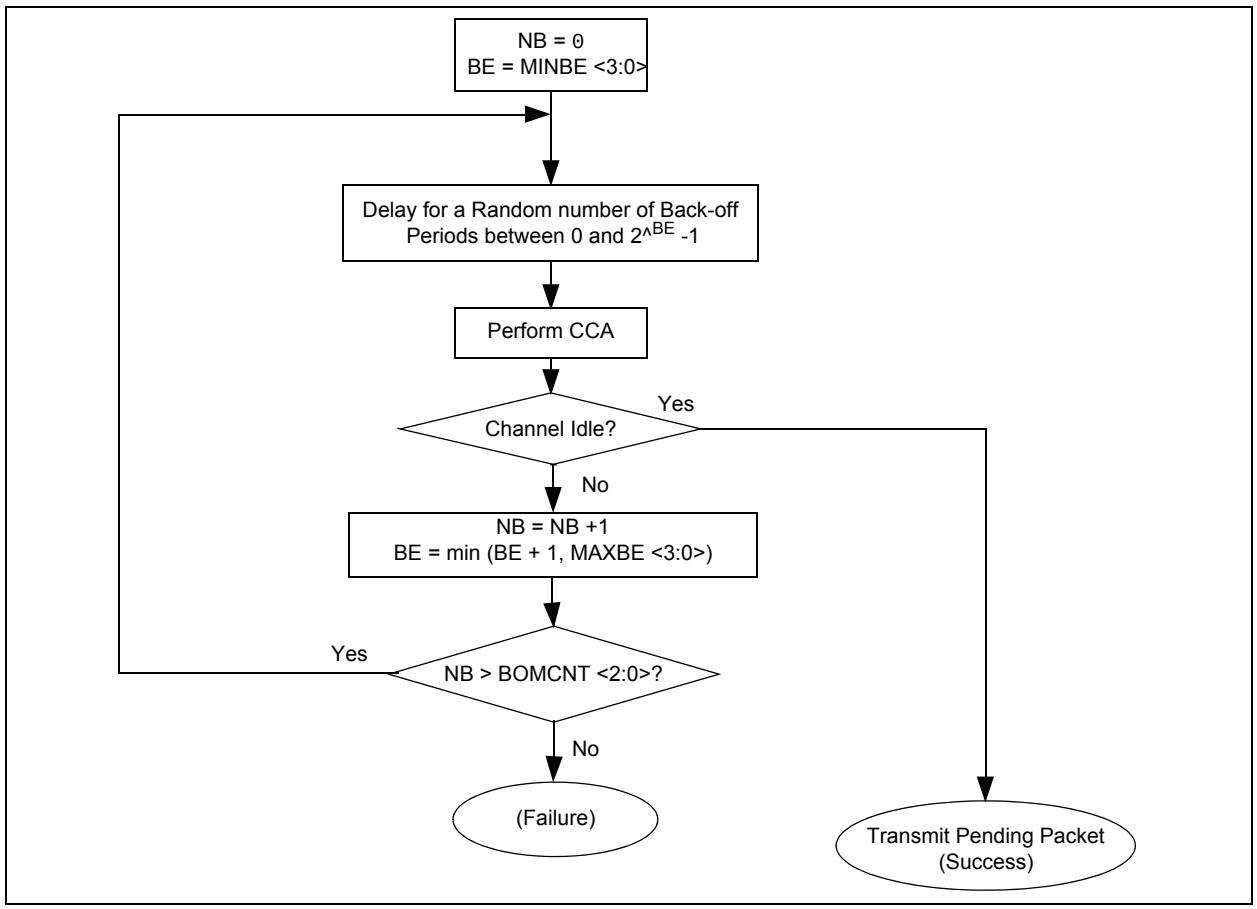
•

•

•

00000000 = 1 Base time unit

FIGURE 4-11: CSMA-CA ALGORITHM



4.12 Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)

Clear Channel Assessment (CCA) is a function within CSMA/CA to determine whether the wireless medium is ready and able to receive data, thus the transmitter can start sending it.

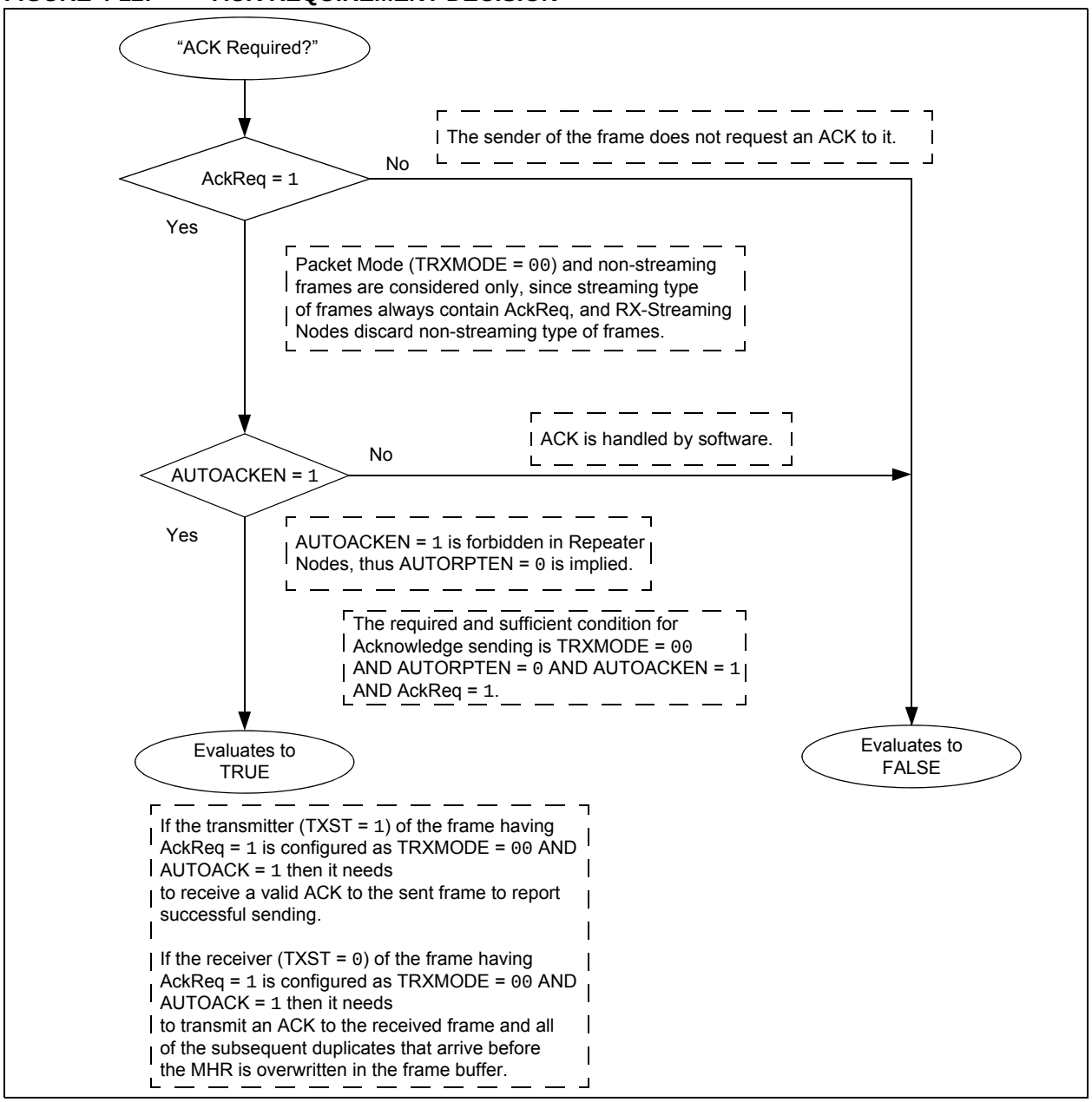
CCA is implemented outside of the MAC. This allows the radio to transmit in the presence of interference from other wireless protocols that operate on the same frequency.

CCA may be performed using either Energy Detection (ED), Carrier Sense (CS) or a combination of both. Refer to **Section 9.6 "Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)"** for more information on register description.

4.13 Condition for Hardware Acknowledgement

Figure 4-11 illustrates the condition for hardware acknowledgement that is examined in Figure 4-8 and Figure 4-10. The AUTOACKEN = 0 case, when Acknowledgement is done by software. Both acknowledgement mechanisms (AUTOACKEN = 0/1) are described for the originator and the recipient.

FIGURE 4-12: ACK REQUIREMENT DECISION



REGISTER 4-16: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL REGISTER 2)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set	C = Clearable bit	

bit 7-3 Out of scope

bit 2 **AUTOACKEN:** Auto-Acknowledge Enable bit

Recipient of a data frame: If this bit is set, the device will automatically transmit an ACK packet whenever a packet is received, and its AckReq bit is set.

Originator of a data frame: If this bit is set, then the device will await a ACK packet after the transmission of a packet (and after each retransmissions of it), and will process the received ACKnowledge packet automatically without writing it to the buffer. Also, setting this bit is required for enabling automatic retransmissions by the device. The host MCU would clear AUTOACKEN to disable the automatic processing of acknowledge frames, so that they be written to the buffer.

1 = Automatic Acknowledge processing enabled
0 = Automatic Acknowledge processing disabled

bit 1-0 Out of scope

4.14 Acknowledge Sending by Recipient

ACK sending shall never use CSMA whether AUTOACKEN = 1 or 0.

A TXIF is not generated when an ACK packet completes transmission. However, TXSFDIF and TXMAIF are set.

FIGURE 4-13: AUTOMATIC ACKNOWLEDGE SENDING (AUTOACKEN = 1 AND ACKREQ = 1)

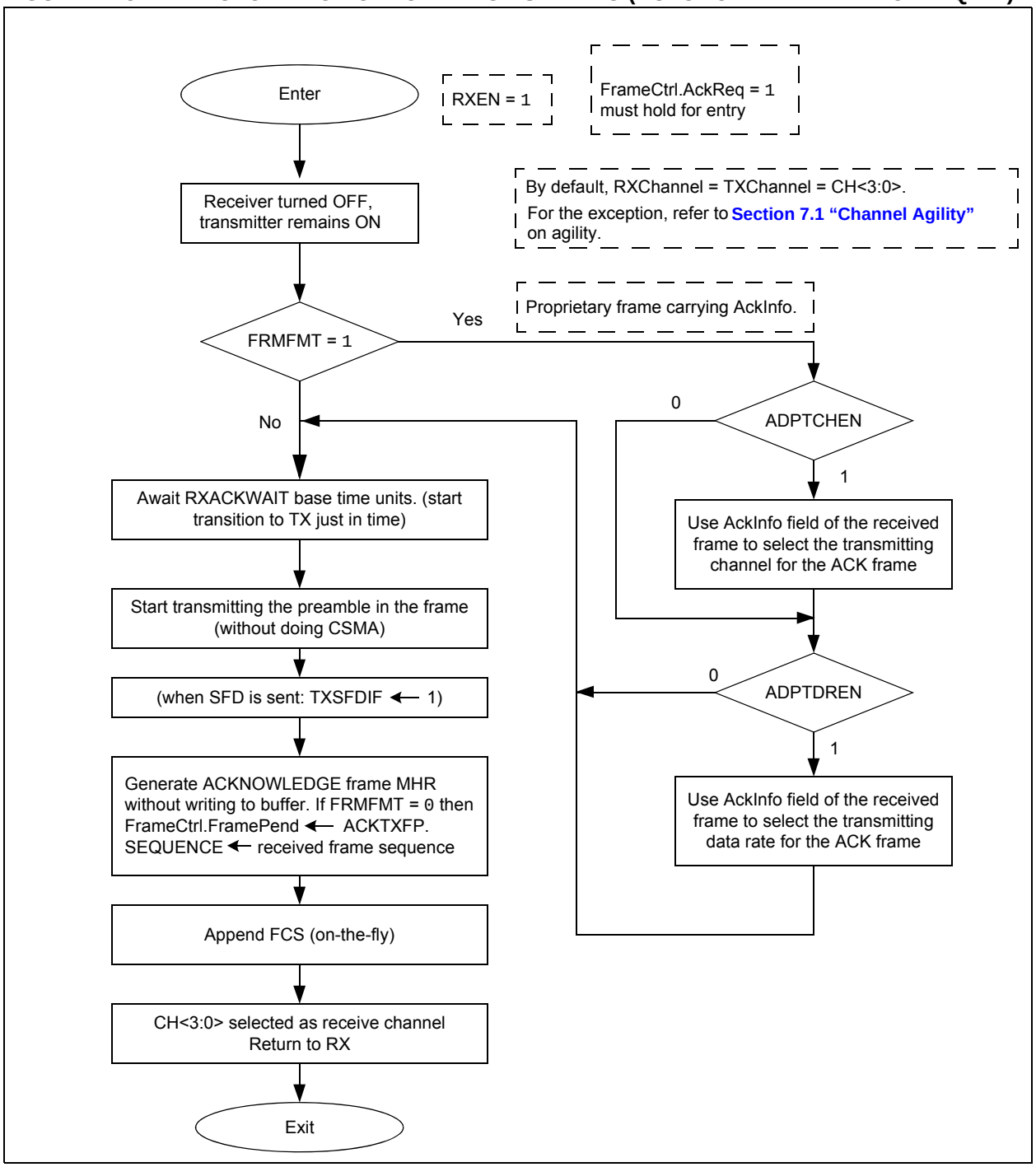


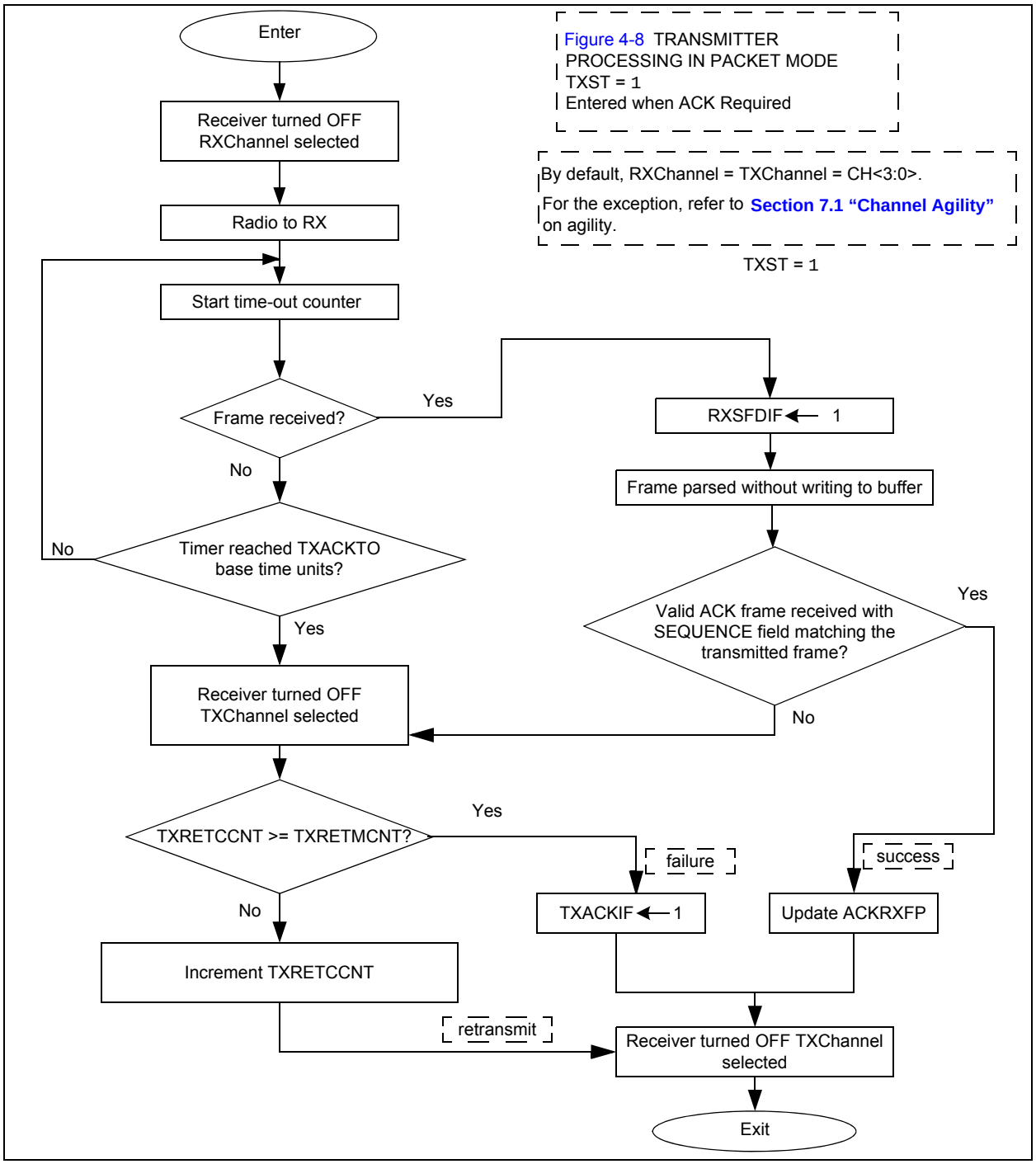
TABLE 4-3: IDENTICAL PACKET REJECTION SCENARIO

RXBUFFULL	IDENTREJ	AutoAck	AckReg	Description
0	0	0	0	No ACK is sent, RXBUFFULL<1
0	0	0	1	
0	0	1	0	
0	0	1	1	ACK is sent, RXBUFFULL<- 1
0	1	0	0	Store Sequence number and Source address (SA + PID) No ACK is sent, RXBUFFULL<- 1
0	1	0	1	
0	1	1	0	
0	1	1	1	Store Sequence number and Source address (SA + PID) ACK is sent, RXBUFFULL<- 1
1	0	X	X	No ACK is sent, RXOVFIF<- 1
1	1	0	0	No ACK is sent, if stored sequence number and Source address match with the received one, then RXIDENTIF<- 1 otherwise, RXOVFIF<- 1
1	1	0	1	
1	1	1	0	
1	1	1	1	If stored sequence number and Source address match with the received one, ACK is sent and RXIDENTIF <- 1 Otherwise, RXOVFIF<- 1

4.15 Acknowledge Reception by Originator

After the reception of a valid ACK packet (sequence field matches with transmitted frame sequence field), RXSFDIF and TXIF interrupts are generated (the RXIF is not generated while receiving an ACK frame). If the maximum number of retransmissions has been reached (TXRETCCNT >= TXRETMCNT), for example, no valid acknowledge received, TXACKIF interrupt is generated.

FIGURE 4-14: ACKNOWLEDGE RECEPTION AND RE-TRANSMISSION CONTROL



4.16 Basetime Units

The desired Basetime is selected by writing the BASETM<4:0> register bits. Each increment of BASETM<4:0> is equal to 1 µs.

The RXACKWAIT<7:0>, TXACKTO<7:0>, BOUNIT<7:0>, STRMTO<15:0> and OFFTM<7:0>(3) fields are specified in terms of Basetime Units.

The BASETM<4:0> bits should not be changed while RXEN = 1 or TXST = 1. The Basetime is used in all modes for all types of packets.

TABLE 4-4: BASETIME UNITS

Function/Timer	Range of Timer with BASETM<4:0> = 0x01 (1 µs resolution)	Range of Timer with BASETM<4:0> = 0x02 (2 µs resolution)	Range of Timer with BASETM<4:0> = 0x04 (4 µs resolution)
Time to wait before transmitting an ACK packet (RXACKWAIT<7:0>)	0 - 128 µs	0 - 256 µs	0 - 512 µs
Maximum time to look for an ACK packet before issuing a TX Ack Error or before retransmitting (TXACKTO<7:0>)	0 - 256 µs	0 - 512 µs	0 - 1024 µs
CSMA Backoff Time (0 - (2^{BE} - 1) * BOUNIT<7:0>)	—	BOUNIT<7:0> = 160(1, 2) (320 µs)	BOUNIT<7:0> = 80(2) (320 µs)
BE = 0	—	0	
BE = 1	—	0 - 320 µs	
BE = 2	—	0 - 960 µs	
BE = 3	—	0 - 2.24 ms	
BE = 4	—	0 - 4.8 ms	
BE = 5	—	0 - 9.92 ms	
BE = 6	—	0 - 20.16 ms	
BE = 7	—	0 - 40.64 ms	
BE = 8	—	0 - 81.6 ms	
RX Stream Timeout (STRMTO<15:0>)	0 - 65 ms	0 - 131 ms	0 - 131 ms
Minimum OFF Time (OFFTM<7:0> * 32)(3)	0 - 8 ms	0 - 16 ms	0 - 32 ms

Note 1: The maximum delay that can be supported by this MAC is 131 ms. Values outside this range may be set, but will result in truncation of the number to one that is less than or equal to 131 ms.

2: The value of 320 µs was chosen because it is the value referenced in the 802.15.4-2006 specification. Other values are possible, but may break 802.15.4 compliance.

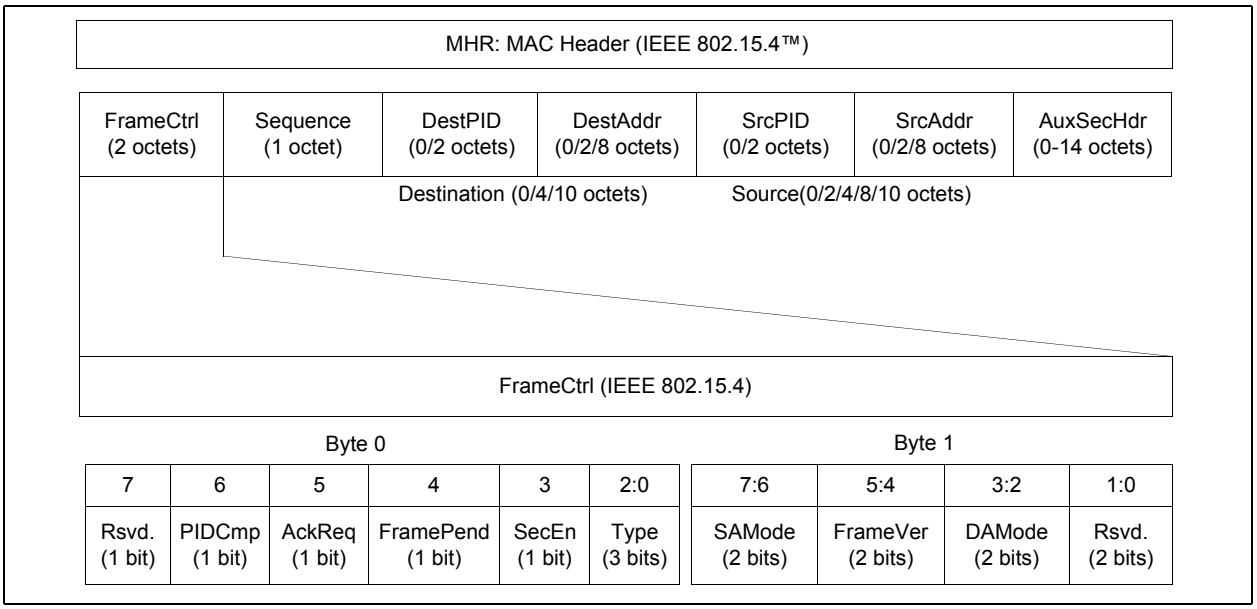
3: Note that the OFFTM<7:0> register is the only timer value that is expressed not directly in BASETM units, but rather is expressed in BASETM * 32 units.

NOTES:

5.0 IEEE 802.15.4™ COMPLIANT FRAME FORMAT AND FRAME PROCESSING

The general MAC header structure is shown in Figure 5-1. The specific format of the Acknowledge frame is given in Figure 5-2. The frame buffer is written with the LENGTH field byte first, followed by Byte 0 of the FrameCtrl field, then Byte 1 of the FrameCtrl field, followed by the SEQUENCE.

FIGURE 5-1: IEEE.802.15.4™ MAC HEADER STRUCTURE



- Type<2:0>: Indicates the frame type. Refer to **Section 5.1 "Frame Types in IEEE 802.15.4-Compliant Framing Mode"** for more information.
- SecEn: Security Enable bit. Refer to **Section 5.3 "Security Material"** and **Section 5.4 "Security Material Retrieval with IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames"** for more information.
- FramePend: This bit of the ACK frame should be set when ACKTXFP = 1 and the frame being ACK'd is an 802.15.4 Data Request Command Frame (FrameCtrl.Type = 011 AND CmdType = 0x04), and cleared otherwise. CSMA-CA is not performed before sending out ACK packets.
- AckReq: ACK Request. Refer to **Section 4.12 "Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)"** for more information.
- PIDCmp: PAN Identifier Compare. Refer to **Section 5.2 "Addressing in IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Framing Mode"** for more information.
- DAMode: Destination Address Mode. Refer to **Section 5.2 "Addressing in IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Framing Mode"** for more information.
- SAMode: Source Address Mode. Refer to **Section 5.2 "Addressing in IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Framing Mode"** for more information.

FIGURE 5-2: IEEE.802.15.4™ ACKNOWLEDGE FRAME STRUCTURE

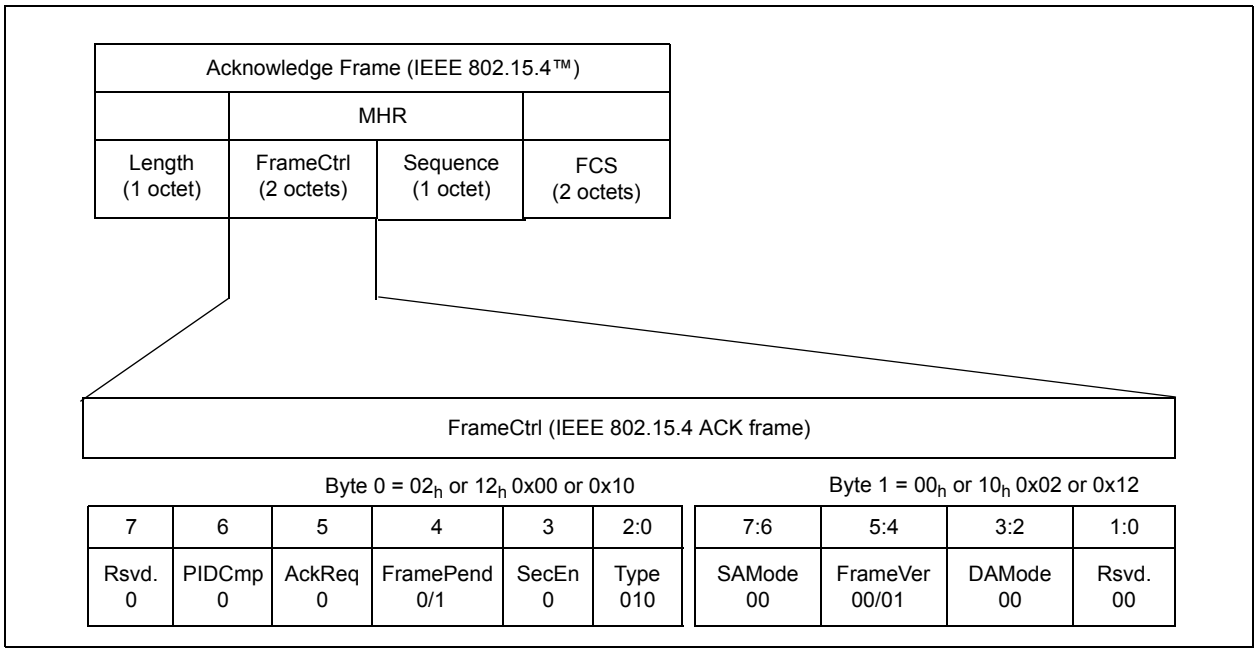
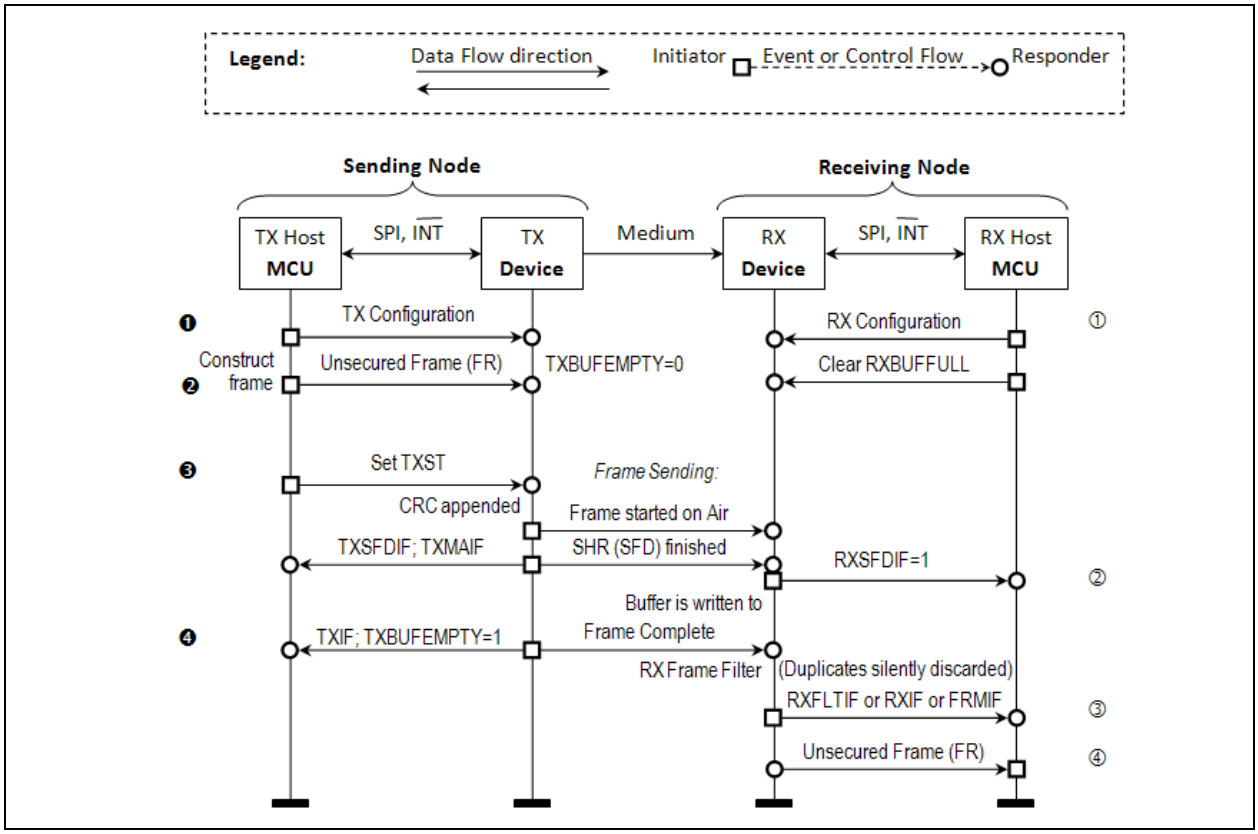


FIGURE 5-3: EXAMPLE: PACKET MODE WITHOUT SECURITY



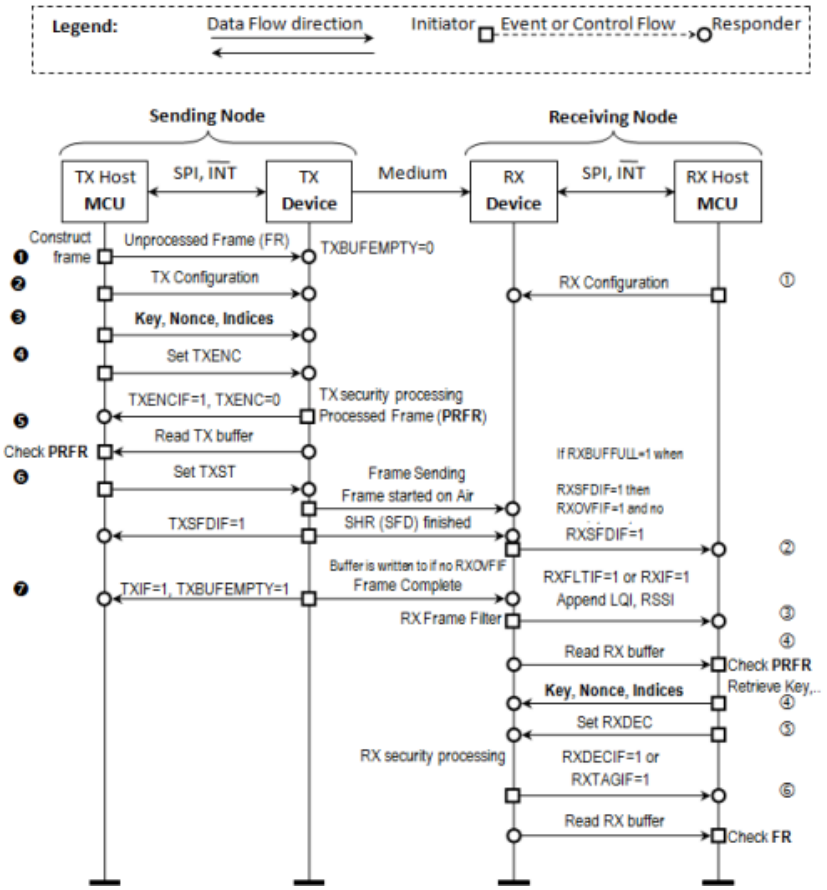
Transmitter Side:

1	Description	TX Configuration: SECEN = 0 CSMAEN = 0
	Example	ShortAddress: 0x1A1B PID: 0x2C2D
2	Description	Construct, download unprocessed frame
	Example	0C | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | FF | (no CRC) Length = 12_d + 2_d (CRC) = 14_d = 0x0E FrameCtrl = 0x01 0x98 = lsb_0000_0001_1001_1000 (Data, SEC = 0, DA, SA Short Addresses, ver2006) Sequence = 0xA8 SA/DA PID = 0x2D2C DA = 0xFFFF (broadcast) SA = 0x1B1A (unicast) MAC Payload = 0xFF
3	Description	Set TXST: Launches transmission. CRC is appended. Length is incremented accordingly.
	Example	0E | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | FF | A7 8E CRC: 0xA7 0x8E
4	Description	End of Transmission (No ACK Request, No CSMA): TXIF received. TXBUFEMPTY = 1

Receiver Side:

1	Description	RX Configuration: SECEN = 0 (NWK), Security Suite
	Example	Address: Don't care.
2	Description	RXSFDIF = 1 unless RXBUFFUL = 1 (If RXBUFFUL= 1 then RXSFDIF = 1; RXOVFIF = 1; no writing to buffer
3	Description	RX Parsing and Filtering when frame reception is complete. If duplicated packet then silently discarded Else if packet filtered then RXFLTIF, Otherwise RXIF = 1 (since SECEN = 0)
	Example	RXFILTER(@0x18) = 0x45
4	Description	RXIF = 1. CRC is not valid for the decrypted frame.
	Example	0E | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | FF | A7 8E||RSVs

FIGURE 5-4: EXAMPLE: PACKET MODE WITH NKW-LAYER SECURITY



Transmitter Side:

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="2">1</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">Construct, download unprocessed frame</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example</td><td colspan="10">12 | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | 01 02 03 04 05 06 | FF | (No MIC, no CRC)
Length = 18_d + 4_d (MIC-32) + 2_d (CRC) = 24_d = 0x18
FrameCtrl = 0x01 0x98 = lsb_0000_0001_1001_1000 (SEC = 0, DA, SA Short Addresses, ver2006)
Sequence = 0xA8
SA/DA PID = 0x2D2C
DA = 0xFFFF (broadcast)
SA = 0x1B1A (unicast)
Network Header = 0x01 0x02 0x03 0x04 0x05 0x06
Network Payload = 0xFF</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">TX Configuration: NWK-layer Security</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example</td><td colspan="10">Security Suite = MIC-32</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="3">3</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">TX Configuration: Key, Nonce, Payload Index, Header Index</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Example</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">Short Address = 0x1B1A
PID = 0x2D2C
Header Index (@0x2B) = 12_d
Payload Index (@0x2C) = 18_d</td><td colspan="9">MRF24XA register content</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x20</td><td>22</td><td>33</td><td>44</td><td>55</td><td>66</td><td>77</td><td>88</td><td>1A</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x28</td><td>1B</td><td>2C</td><td>2D</td><td>0C</td><td>12</td><td>00</td><td>00</td><td>00</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Key<i> =
0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100

Nonce<i> = 0x50 + <i>, i = 0…12</td><td colspan="9">MRF24XA register content</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x40</td><td>00</td><td>01</td><td>02</td><td>03</td><td>04</td><td>05</td><td>06</td><td>07</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x48</td><td>08</td><td>09</td><td>0A</td><td>0B</td><td>0C</td><td>0D</td><td>0E</td><td>0F</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x50</td><td>60</td><td>61</td><td>62</td><td>63</td><td>64</td><td>65</td><td>66</td><td>67</td></tr>
<tr><td>0x58</td><td>68</td><td>69</td><td>6A</td><td>6B</td><td>6C</td><td>00</td><td>00</td><td>00</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">Issue TXENC: Launches CCM authentication and encryption.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">5</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">Security Processing Done: TXENCIF = 1, TXENC = 0.
Optionally, TX buffer can be read. Processed Frame PRFR can be compared to the result of the receiver security processing or to the calculated expected outcome.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example</td><td colspan="10">Expected buffer content:
16 | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | 01 02 03 04 05 06 | 46 | 78 C3 22 32 | (no CRC)
Encrypted payload (0xFF): 0x46
MIC-32: 0x{78 C3 22 32}
CRC: 0xA7 0x8E</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">6</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">Set TXST: Launches transmission. CRC is appended.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Example</td><td colspan="10">18 | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | 01 02 03 04 05 06 | 46 | 78 C3 22 32 | A7 8E
CRC: 0xA7 0x8E</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>Description</td><td colspan="10">End of Transmission (No ACK Request, No CSMA): TXIF received. TXBUFEMPTY= 1</td></tr>
</table>

Receiver Side:

1	Description	RX Configuration: Security Suite
	Example	Security Suite = MIC-32
2	Description	If RXBUFFUL is 0 then RXSFDIF = 1 If RXBUFFUL is 1 then RXSFDIF = 1 RXOVFIF = 1 (no writing to buffer)
3	Description	RX Parsing and Filtering when frame reception is complete. If packet filtered then RXFLTIF, Otherwise = 1 (Network secured frame received since SECEN = 0)
	Example	RXFILTER(@0x18) = 0x45
4	Description	Read RX buffer containing PRFR + CRC. CRC is valid for the encrypted frame and, LQI, RSSI (RSVs) appended to the frame.
	Example	18 | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | 01 02 03 04 05 06 | 46 | 78 C3 22 32 | A7 8E || RSVs CRC: 0xA7 0x8E
5	Description	RXDEC = 1 launches decryption and authenticity checking.
6	Description	If authenticity is approved (success): RXDECIF = 1. CRC is not valid for the decrypted frame. Otherwise RXTAGIF = 1.
	Example	1A | 01 98 | A8 | 2C 2D | FF FF | 2C 2D | 1A 1B | 01 02 03 04 05 06 | FF | 78 C3 22 32 | A7 8E |6C 42 RSSI: 0x6C LQI: 0x42

5.1 Frame Types in IEEE 802.15.4-Compliant Framing Mode

The Type<2:0> bit field in FrameCtrl uses the encoding in Table 5-1.

TABLE 5-1: IEEE 802.15.4™ FRAME TYPES

TYPE Field b2,b1,b0	Frame Type	Related Hardware Features
000	Beacon	Beacons are a specific type of broadcast frames. This device does not provide support for MHR-parsing on beacon frames. Beacon frames are always accepted as valid frames.
001	Data	Can be filtered by setting DATAREJ.
010	Acknowledge	Must be generated by the receiver (from SW or HW), if AckReq = 1 in the last received frame, and must contain the same Sequence value. Can be generated by hardware (AUTOACKEN = 1). In this case it is not loaded to the TX frame buffer. AUTOACKEN = 1 requires CRCSZ = 1 on both the transmitter and the receiver side.
011	Command	Can be filtered by CMDREJ. First byte of payload (Command) is never encrypted. Command encoding in Table 82 in Section 7.3 of IEEE 802.15.4™-2006.
1xx	Reserved	—

If SecEn bit in FrameCtrl is set then the frame is parsed by hardware to construct the security material (both at sending and after reception). In the case of Beacon frames, it is the responsibility of the host MCU to set the security materials before transmission (TXST) and after reception (RXIF).

For beacon frames, the Frame Version subfield shall be set to '1' only if the Security Enabled subfield is set to '1'.

REGISTER 5-1: RXFILTER (RX FILTER REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PANCRDN	CRCREJ	CMDREJ	DATAREJ	UNIREJ	NOTMEREJ	BCREJ	NSTDREJ
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-6 Out of Scope

bit 5 **CMDREJ:** Command Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl<Type> equal to Command.

1 = Reject all Command packets
0 = Disable Command Frame Rejection

bit 4 **DATAREJ:** Data Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl<Type> equal to Data.

1 = Reject all Data packets
0 = Disable Data Frame Rejection

bit 3-0 Out of Scope

5.2 Addressing in IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Framing Mode

Address format used in MHR is defined by the Destination Addressing Mode (DAMode) and Source Addressing Mode (SAMode) bit fields of FrameCrtl (Figure 5-1). DAMode subfield encodes the length of the DestPID and DestAddr fields as listed in Table 5-3. SAMode subfield encodes the length of the SrcPID and SrcAddr fields as listed in Table 5-3.

TABLE 5-2: IEEE 802.15.4™ DESTINATION ADDRESSING MODES

DAMode b1, b0	Destination Addressing Mode	DestPID | DestAddr format
11	16-bit DestPID and 64-bit Dest. Long Address	XXXXh | XXXX_ XXXX_ XXXX_ XXXXh
10	16-bit DestPID and 16-bit Dest. Short Address	XXXXh | XXXXh
01	Reserved	—
00	DestPID and DestAddr are not present	—

TABLE 5-3: IEEE 802.15.4™ SOURCE ADDRESSING MODES

SAMode b1, b0	Source Addressing Mode	SrcPID | SrcAddr Format
11	If DAMode<1> = 1 and PIDCmp = 1, then 64-bit Source Long Address only (SrcPID is implied by DestPID) else, 16-bit SrcPID and 64-bit Source Long Address	- |XXXX_XXXX_XXXX_XXXXh XXXXh | XXXX_XXXX_XXXX_XXXXh
10	If DAMode<1> = 1 and PIDCmp = 1, then 16-bit Source Short Address only (SrcPID is implied by DestPID) else, 16-bit SrcPID and 16-bit Source Short Address	- |XXXXh XXXXh | XXXXh
01	Reserved	—
00	SrcPID and SrcAddr are not present	—

On reception of a frame, each node compares its own SHADDR, ADDR, PANID configuration (see Table 5-4) to the appropriate destination addressing fields in the received frame. A valid frame is identified if a match is found.

Additionally, rules apply for broadcast frames and for implied unicast addressing as explained in the sequel.

TABLE 5-4: RELEVANT REGISTERS FOR IEEE 802.15.4™-MODE ADDRESSING

ADDR.	RESGISTER	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0x1F	ADDR1	ADDR<7:0>							
0x20	ADDR2	ADDR<15:8>							
0x21	ADDR3	ADDR<23:16>							
0x22	ADDR4	ADDR<31:24>							
0x23	ADDR5	ADDR<39:32>							
0x24	ADDR6	ADDR<47:40>							
0x25	ADDR7	ADDR<55:48>							
0x26	ADDR8	ADDR<63:56>							
0x27	SHADDRL	SHADDR<7:0>							
0x28	SHADDRH	SHADDR<15:8>							
0x29	PANIDL	PANID<7:0>							
0x2A	PANIDH	PANID<15:8>							

If DAMode subfield is equal to zero and the Frame Type subfield does not specify that this frame is an acknowledgment or beacon frame, then the SAMode subfield shall be non-zero, implying that the frame is directed to the PAN coordinator with the PAN identifier as specified in the Source PAN Identifier field. This addressing option is referred to as 'implied'.

Broadcast frames of type data or command must always use DAMode = 01 and DestAddr = FFFFh.

Acknowledge frames are broadcast frames and always use DAMode = 00 and SAMode = 00.

Beacon frames are broadcast frames and always use DAMode = 00, PIDCmp = 0 with SAMode = 01 or 10. Table 5-6 and Table 5-7 show the examples for destination and source addressing, using the TX and RX node configurations in Table 5-5.

TABLE 5-5: EXAMPLE CONFIGURATION

TX (Source) Configuration	ADDR = 0x080706050403020100 SHADDR = 0x1211 PANID = 0xD2D1
RX (Destination) Configuration	ADDR = 0xA8A7A6A5A4A3A2A1A0 SHADDR = 0xB2B1 PANID = 0xB2B1
MHR	FrameCtrl | Sequence | DestPID | DestAddr| SrcPID | SrcAddr
FrameCtrl	FrameCtrl<7:0> = 0 | PIDCmp | X | X | X | Type<2:0> FrameCtrl<15:8> = SAMode<1:0> | 0 | X | DAMode<1:0> | 0 | 0 where, **Type** is not Acknowledge and X is either of {0,1}

TABLE 5-6: DESTINATION ADDRESSING OPTIONS (IEEE 802.15.4™) USING THE EXAMPLE

Options	Broadcast		Unicast		
	Command (or Data)	Beacon	Long	Short	Implied to Coordin.
DestPID | DestAddr	XX,XX | FF, FF	—	D1,D2 | A1, A2,…, A8	D1,D2 | B1, B2	—
TYPE	xxx	000	xxx	xxx	not 000
DAMode	10	00	11	10	00
Address Filter	BCREJ	—	NOTMEREJ, UNIREJ		—

Note 1: DAMode = 01 is reserved and is rejected by NSTDREJ = 1.

TABLE 5-7: SOURCE ADDRESSING OPTIONS (IEEE 802.15.4™) USING THE EXAMPLE

Options	Long (Explicit SrcPID)	Long (Implied SrcPID)	Short (Explicit SrcPID)	Short (Implied SrcPID)	None
SrcPID | SrcAddr	D1,D2 | 01, 02, 03,…, 08	01, 02, 03,…, 08	D1, D2 | 11, 12	11, 12	—
TYPE	xxx	xxx	xxx	xxx	xxx
SAMode	11	11	10	10	00
DAMode	xx	1x	xx	1x	xx
PIDCmp	0	1	0	1	x

Note 1: SAMode = 01, is reserved, and is rejected by NSTDREJ = 1.

The valid address formats are summarized in Table 5-8 for all frame types. Broadcast and unicast cases are distinguished in the case of command and data frames.

Unicast frames are either addressed to the receiving node or to a different node. UNIREJ and NOTMEREJ are sensitive to the former or the latter case, respectively. Broadcast command and data frames are filtered by setting BCREJ. Beacon frames are not filtered by the parser.

REGISTER 5-2: RXFILTER (RX FILTER) – WHEN IEEE 802.15.4™ MODE

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
r	r	r	r	UNIREJ	NOTMEREJ	BCREJ	NSTDREJ
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 3 **UNIREJ:** Unicast Reject Enable bit(2)

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all unicast packets as in:

802.15.4 Mode: PAN Identifier matches with the PANID<15:0> or 0xFFFF, and Destination Address matches the address in the ADDR<63:0> or SHADDR<15:0> register, as selected by DAMode.

Proprietary Mode: Destination Address matches the address in ADDR<ADDRSZ<2:0>*8-1:0> register, provided that DAddrPrsnt frame control field is set(1).

1 = Reject all Unicast packets addressed to this node
0 = Disable Unicast Rejection

bit 2 **NOTMEREJ:** Not Me Unicast Reject Enable bit(3)

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all unicast packets as in:

802.15.4 Mode: Destination PAN Identifier does not match PANID<15:0> and is not 0xFFFF (broadcast) or Destination Address does not match the address in the ADDR<63:0> register or the SHADDR<15:0> register, as selected by DAMode.

Proprietary Mode: Destination Address matches the address in ADDR<ADDRSZ<2:0>*8-1:0> register, provided that DAddrPrsnt frame control field is set(1).

1 = Reject all Unicast packets NOT addressed to this node
0 = Disable Not Me Unicast Rejection Filtering

bit 1 **BCREJ:** Broadcast Rejection bit

802.15.4 Mode: Setting this bit allows the user to reject all Broadcast packets of type Data or Command. A Data or Command packet is broadcast when Short Destination Addressing is used (DAMode = 10) and Short Address is equal 0xFFFF.

Proprietary Mode: Setting this bit allows the user to reject all Broadcast packets of type Data or Command (or Streaming). A packet is broadcast when FrameCtrl[Broadcast] is set.

1 = Reject Broadcast Packets
0 = Disable Broadcast Rejection

bit 0 **NSTDREJ:** Non-Standard Frame Reject bit(4)

This bit allows the user to reject all 802.15.4 frames having 01 for the DAMode or SAMode fields or having the most significant bit (MSb) (bit 2) in the Type field set (1) or having the MSb (bit 1) in the Frame Version field set to(1).

1 = Reject all Non-Standard 802.15.4 packets
0 = Disable Non-Standard Rejection

Note 1: In Proprietary mode (FRMFMT = 1), when CRCREJ = 1 is used to reject unicast frames not addressed to this node. NOTMEREJ = 1 will not reject these frames.

2: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by UNIREJ.

3: Frames using implied destination addressing in 802.15.4 mode and inferred destination addressing in Proprietary mode are not affected by NOTMEREJ.

4: Proprietary frames in Proprietary mode are not affected by NSTDREJ.

When a valid frame gets filtered, RXFLTIF is set, otherwise the successful reception is terminated by RXIF. Refer to Register 5-1 for more information.

Invalid addressing formats are produced if:

- Either DAMode or SAMode are set to the reserved value of '01'.
- DAMode or SAMode values are used with an incompatible Type field value. For example,
  - Beacon with DAMode = 1x
  - DAMode = 00, SAMode = 00 used with Type of Beacon/Command / Data.
- PIDCmp is set on an inconsistent way to DAMode and SAMode.
- SrcPID or SrcAddr holds 'FFFF', or if DestPID holds 'FFFF' while DAMode = 11.
- LENGTH field is less than the MHR length computed from FrameCtrl.

The first condition is checked by the device and FRMIF is generated. The second condition is not checked by the device, therefore one out of RXIF, RXFLTIF, FRMIF is expected. The third condition is checked by the hardware and PIDCmp value is handled as 0. The fourth condition is not checked by hardware and RXIF is expected. All other invalid formats also produces one out of RXIF, RXFLTIF, FRMIF.

TABLE 5-8: IEEE 802.15.4™ TEST CASES: VALID ADDRESSING FORMATS

DA	PID COMP	SA	DEST(2)	TYPES(3)	Field Sizes in Octets(4)	Description(5)
00	0(1)	00	BC3	A	0|0|0|0	Acknowledge Frame (no Auto-Ack)
10	0(1)	00	BC1	C,D	2|2|0|0	Short destination (xxxx|FFFF), No Source
10	0(1)	00	BC2	C,D	2|2|0|0	Short destination (FFFF|xxxx), No Source
10	0(1)	00	UNI	C,D	2|2|0|0	Short destination, No Source
10	0(1)	00	NOTME	C,D	2|2|0|0	Short destination, No Source
11	0(1)	00	UNI	C,D	2|8|0|0	Long destination, No Source
11	0(1)	00	NOTME	C,D	2|8|0|0	Long destination, No Source
00	0(1)	10	BC3	B	0|0|2|2	Beacon frame sent by the Coordinator
00	0(1)	10	UNI2, PANCRDN	C,D	0|0|2|2	Implied addressing to Coordinator node. UNI2 for Coordinator.
00	0(1)	10	NOTME2, PANCRDN	C,D	0|0|2|2	Implied addressing to Coordinator node. NOTME2 for all nodes other.
00	0(1)	11	BC3	B	0|0|2|8	Beacon frame sent by the Coordinator
00	0(1)	11	—	C,D	0|0|2|8	Implied addressing to Coordinator node. UNI2 for Coordinator.
00	0(1)	11	NOTME2, PANCRDN	C,D	0|0|2|8	Implied addressing to Coordinator node. NOTME2 for all nodes other.
10	0(1)	10	BC1	C,D	2|0|2|2	Short destination (xxxx | FFFF), Short source
10	0(1)	10	BC2	C,D	2|0|2|2	Short destination (FFFF | xxxx), Short source
10	0	10	UNI	C,D	2|0|2|2	Short destination, Short source
10	0	10	NOTME	C,D	2|2|2|2	Short destination, Short source
10	1	10	BC1	C,D	2|2|0|2	Short destination(xxxx | FFFF), Short source (PID compression)
10	1	10	UNI	C,D	2|2|0|2	Short destination, Short source (PID compression)
10	1	10	NOTME	C,D	2|2|0|2	Short destination, Short source (PID compression)
10	0	11	BC1	C,D	2|2|2|8	Short destination (xxxx | FFFF), Long source
10	0	11	BC2	C,D	2|2|2|8	Short destination (FFFF | xxxx), Long source
10	0	11	UNI	C,D	2|2|2|8	Short destination, Long source
10	0	11	NOTME	C,D	2|2|2|8	Short destination, Long source
10	1	11	BC1	C,D	2|2|0|8	Short destination (xxxx | FFFF), Long source (PID compression)
10	1	11	UNI	C,D	2|2|0|8	Short destination, Long source (PID compression)

TABLE 5-8: IEEE 802.15.4™ TEST CASES: VALID ADDRESSING FORMATS (CONTINUED)

DA	PID COMP	SA	DEST[2]	TYPES[3]	Field Sizes in Octets[4]	Description[5]
10	1	11	NOTME	C,D	2|2|0|8	Short destination, Long source (PID compression)
11	0	10	UNI	C,D	2|8|2|2	Long destination, Short source
11	0	10	NOTME	C,D	2|8|2|2	Long destination, Short source
11	1	10	UNI	C,D	2|8|0|2	Long destination, Short source (PID compression)
11	1	10	NOTME	C,D	2|8|0|2	Long destination, Short source (PID compression)
11	0	11	UNI	C,D	2|8|2|8	Long destination, Long source
11	0	11	NOTME	C,D	2|8|2|8	Long destination, Long source
11	1	11	UNI	C,D	2|8|0|8	Long destination, Long source (PID compression)
11	1	11	NOTME	C,D	2|8|0|8	Long destination, Long source (PID compression)

Note 1: The standard requires 0 in the cases marked by (1); yet, 1 will be handled as 0 in such cases by the device parser (without erroring out).

2: 'BC1'- Broadcast addr only,'BC2'- Broadcast pid only, 'BC3'- Broadcast no daddr, 'UNI'- Unicast to this node, 'UNI2'- Unicast to this node when no destination address is present, 'NOTME'- Unicast to different node, 'NOTME2'- Unicast to different node when no destination address is present.

3: **Frame Types Legend:** 'A'-acknowledge, 'B'-beacon, 'C'-command, 'D'-data.

4: DESTPID | DESTADDR | SRCPID | SRCADDR.

5: In the descriptions, 'xxxx' represents a 4-digit hexa number different from 'FFFF'.

5.3 Security Material

The security material required for CBC-MAC, CTR and CCM are the inputs configured to the registers listed in Table 5-10. These are:

- SECSUITE<3:0> selects the security suite consisting of encryption and/or authentication (see Table 5-9).
- SECHDRINDX<6:0> is the byte index where authentication shall start.
- SECPAYINDX<6:0> is the byte index where encryption/decryption shall start.
- SECENDINDX<6:0> points at the last byte of the payload (before MIC and FCS).
- SECKEY<127:0> holds the symmetric Key.
- SECNONCE<103:0> holds a Nonce value that is unique for each frame while a specific Key is in use. This ensures sequence freshness (for protection against repeat-attack) and protects the key from being deciphered based on the encoded messages. The information required to generate the Nonce is generated by the transmitter and sent to the receiver as plain text as part of the frame.

Section 5.4 "Security Material Retrieval with IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames" describe how the security level is selected and whether the above registers are filled out by the device or by the software before security operation is launched. DEVICE/HOST fills in these registers and the Authentication appends a MIC tag to the frame (before FCS is appended), after the position pointed at by SECENDINDX. Encryption/decryption alters the "payload" stored in the buffer from SECPAYINDX through SECENDINDX. The range defined for "Payload" does not necessarily coincide with the MAC payload as explained in the sequel.

Figure 5-2 to Figure 5-9 illustrate the order of all the security operations, which is valid for both 2003/2006 compliant framing modes.

TABLE 5-9: SECURITY LEVEL: MODE OF OPERATION

Security Level[1]	Payload	MIC Tag of Octets	Comment
0000	Plain text	No Authentication	—
0001	Plain text	4 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2006
0010	Plain text	8 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2006
0011	Plain text	16 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2006

TABLE 5-9: SECURITY LEVEL: MODE OF OPERATION (CONTINUED)

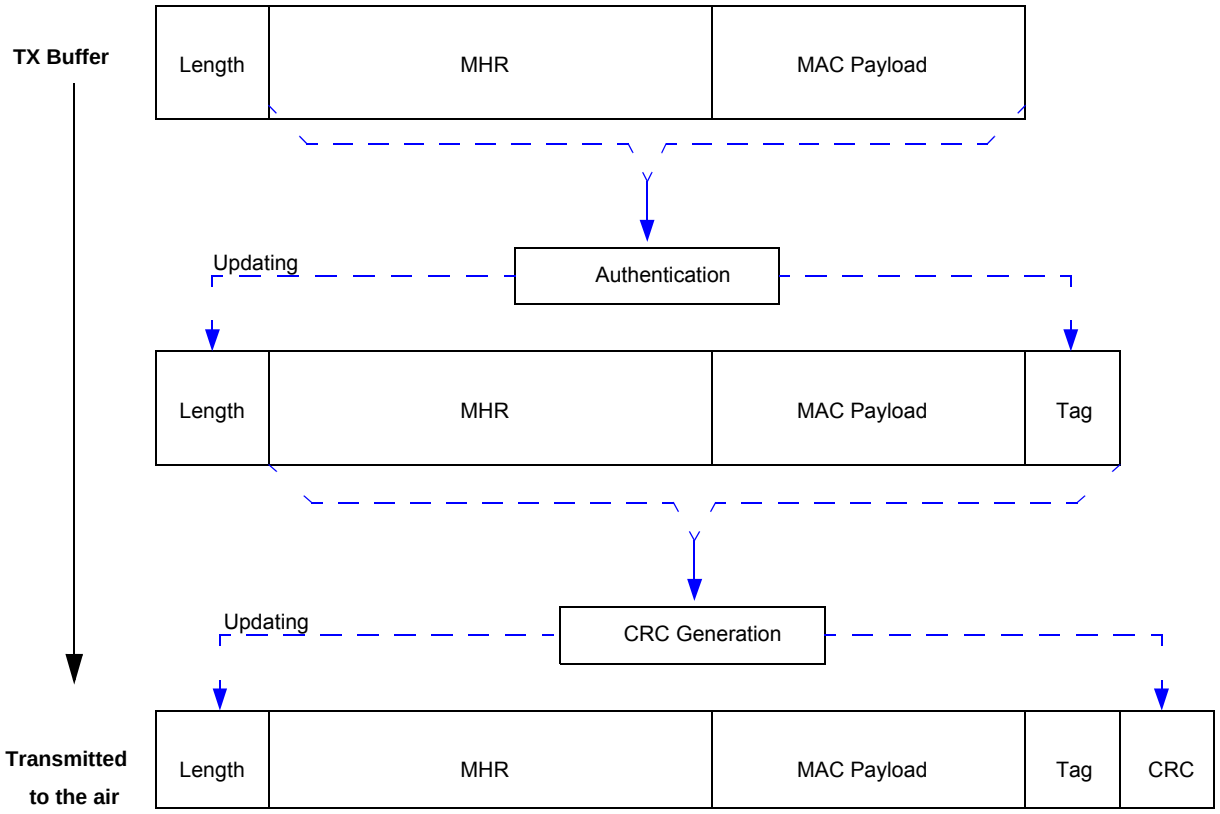
Security Level[1]	Payload	MIC Tag of Octets	Comment
0100	Encrypted	No Authentication	CCM operation. Defined only in 2006
0101	Encrypted	4 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2003/2006
0110	Encrypted	8 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2003/2006
0111	Encrypted	16 bytes	CCM operation. Defined only in 2003/2006
1000	Encrypted	No Authentication	ECB operation. Not defined in 2003/2006 (only encryption)
1001	Encrypted	No Authentication	CTR operation. Defined in 2003
1010	Reserved	—	—
1011	Reserved	—	—
1100	Reserved	—	—
1101	Plain text	16 bytes	CBC-MAC operation. Defined only in 2003
1110	Plain text	8 bytes	CBC-MAC operation. Defined only in 2003
1111	Plain text	4 bytes	CBC-MAC operation. Defined only in 2003

Note 1: In 2006 compliant framing, the security level is traveling with the frame, while in 2003 it should be set globally.

TABLE 5-10: SECURITY MATERIAL INPUTS TO CBC-MAC, CTR AND CCM

ADDR.	RESGISTER	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0x10	MACCON1	TRXMODE<1:0>		ADDRSZ<2:0>			CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
0x11	MACCON2	CH<3:0>				SECSUITE<3:0>			
0x2B	SECHDRINDX	SECHDRINDX<6:0>							
0x2C	SECPAYINDX	SECPAYINDX<6:0>							
0x2D	SECENDINDX	SECENDINDX<6:0>							
0x40 through 0x4F	SECKEY1	SECKEY<7:0>							
	<2,3,4…,15>	…							
	SECKEY16	SECKEY<127:120>							
0x50 through 0x5C	SECNONCE1	SECNONCE<7:0>							
	<2,3,4…,12>	…							
	SECNONCE13	SECNONCE<103:96>							
0x5D	SECENCFLAG	SECENCFLAG<7:0>							
0x5E	SECAUTHFLAG	SECAUTHFLAG<7:0>							

FIGURE 5-5: CCM*/CBC-MAC AUTHENTICATION OPERATION (TX)



Exception Handling:

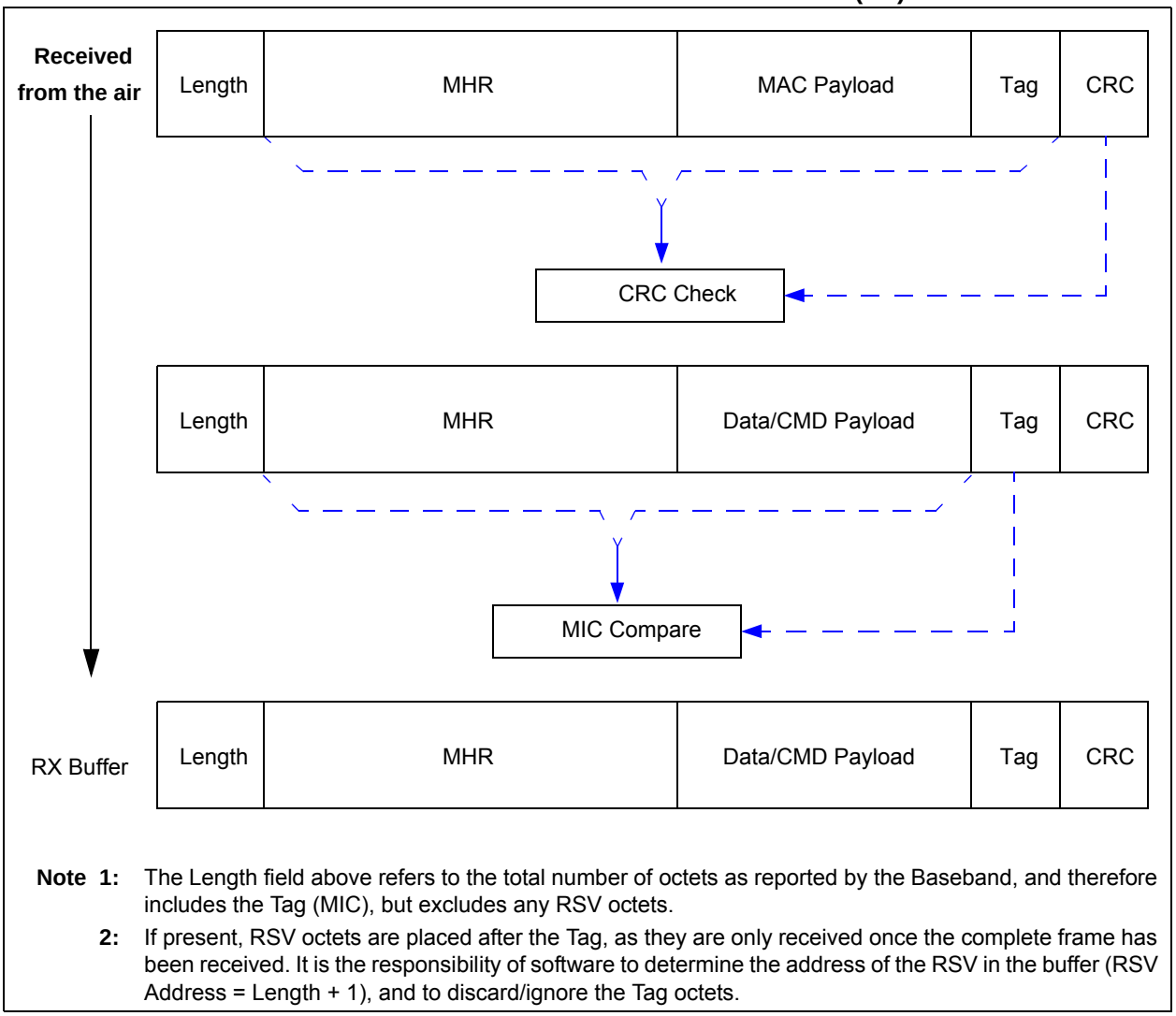
TXSZIF: Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag

TXST is set when the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support.

FRMIF: Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). For example, reserved values are found in the MAC header fields.

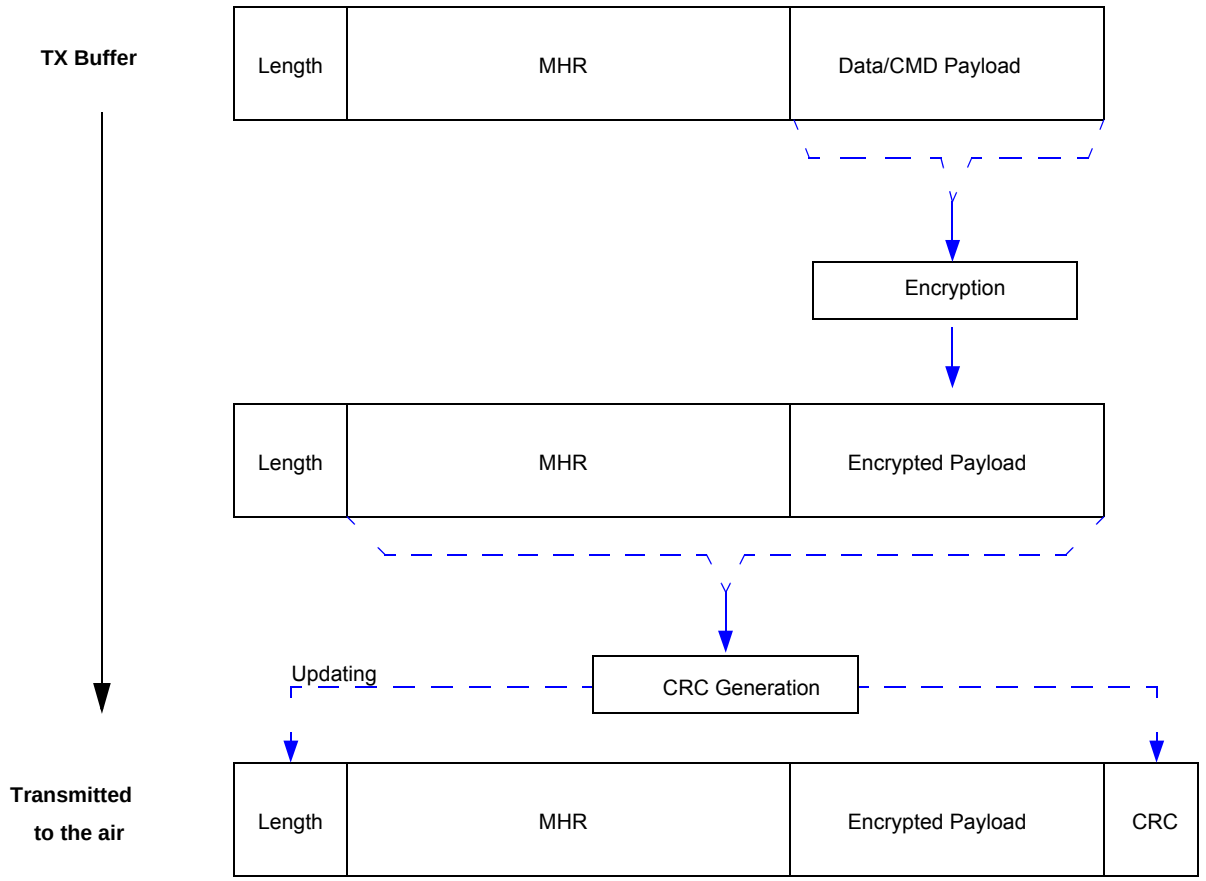
FIGURE 5-6: CCM*/CBC-MAC DE-AUTHENTICATION OPERATION (RX)(1, 2)



Note 1: The Length field above refers to the total number of octets as reported by the Baseband, and therefore includes the Tag (MIC), but excludes any RSV octets.

2: If present, RSV octets are placed after the Tag, as they are only received once the complete frame has been received. It is the responsibility of software to determine the address of the RSV in the buffer (RSV Address = Length + 1), and to discard/ignore the Tag octets.

FIGURE 5-7: CCM*/CTR/ECB ENCRYPTION OPERATION (TX)



Exception handling:

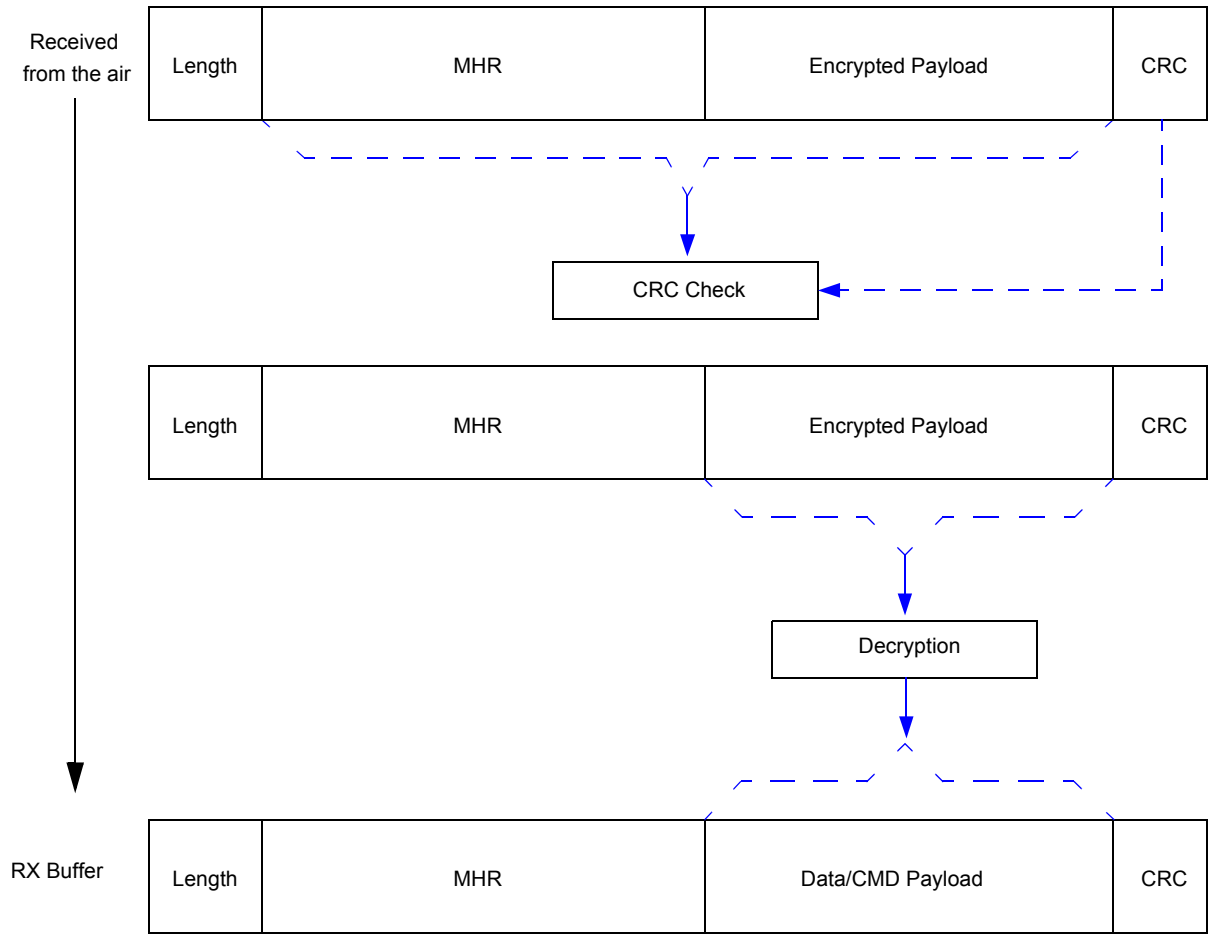
TXSZIF: Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag

TXST is set when the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support.

FRMIF: Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). For example, reserved values are found in the MAC header fields.

FIGURE 5-8: CCM*/CTR/ECB DECRYPTION OPERATION (TX)(1, 2)



Exception Handling:

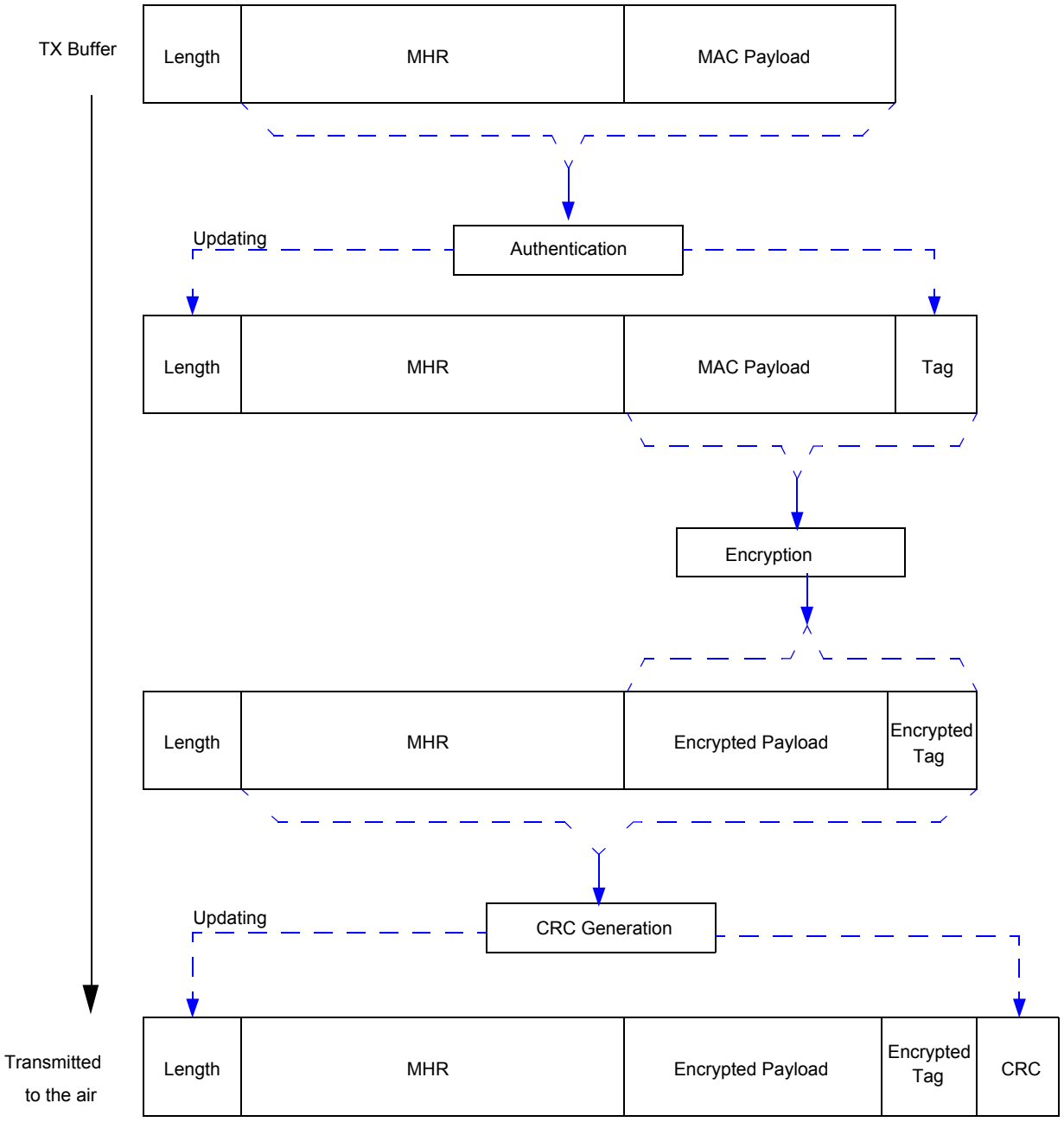
RXTAGIF: Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Flag

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished with error.

Note 1: The Length field above refers to the total number of octets as reported by the Baseband, and therefore includes the Tag (MIC), but excludes any RSV octets.

2: If present, RSV octets are placed after the Tag, as they are only received once the complete frame has been received. It is the responsibility of software to determine the address of the RSV in the buffer (RSV Address = Length + 1), and to discard/ignore the Tag octets.

FIGURE 5-9: CCM* ENCRYPTION AND AUTHENTICATION OPERATION (TX)



Exception handling:

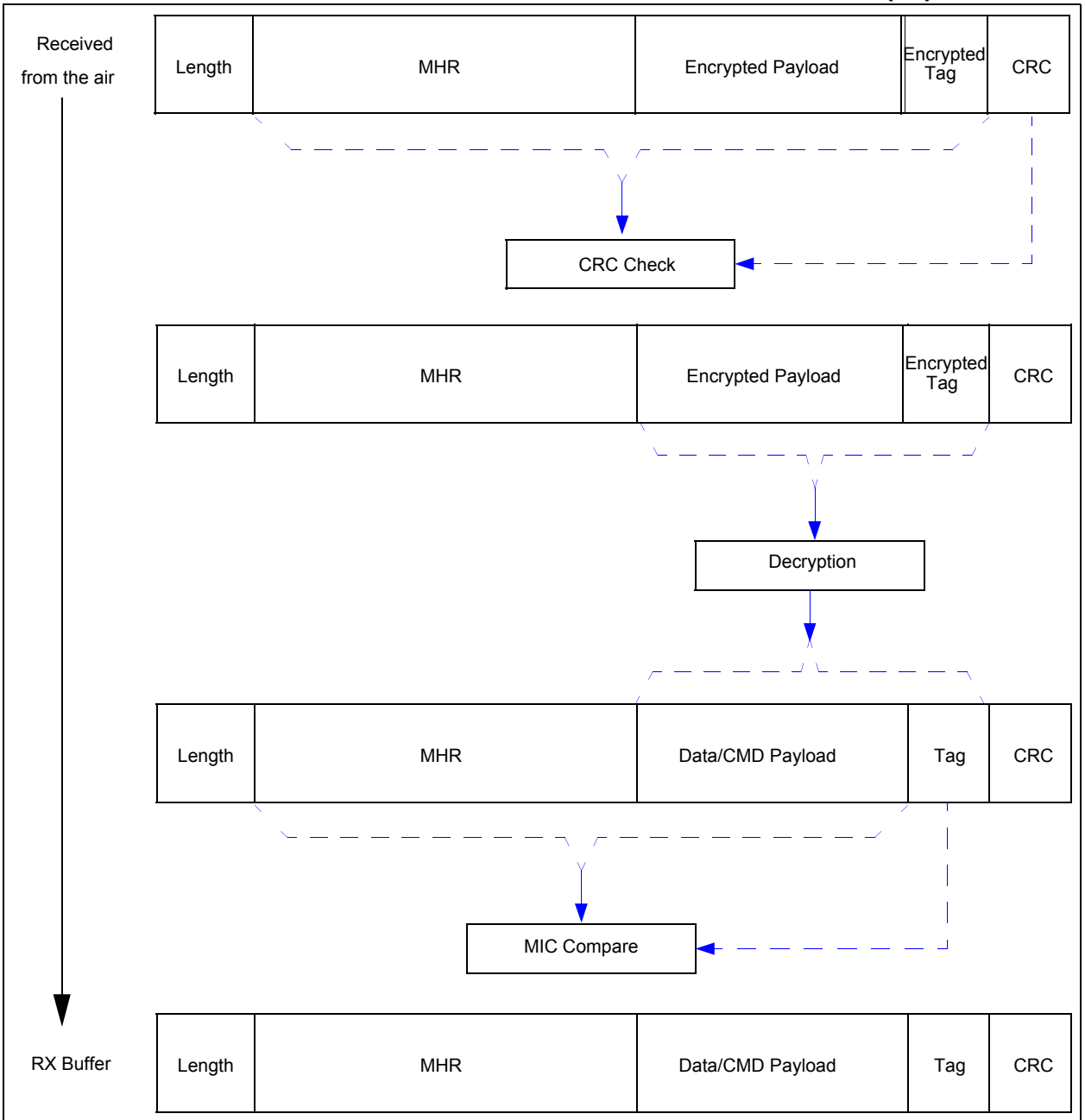
TXSZIF: Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag

TXST is set when the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support.

FRMIF: Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag

Set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). For example, reserved values are found in the MAC header fields.

FIGURE 5-10: CCM* DECRYPTION AND DE-AUTHENTICATION OPERATION (RX)(1, 2, 3)



Exception Handling:

RXTAGIF: Receiver Decryption/Authentication Failure Interrupt Flag

Set by the device when decryption/authentication finished with error.

Note 1: The Length field above refers to the total number of octets as reported by the Baseband, and therefore includes the Tag (MIC), but excludes any RSV octets.

2: If present, RSV octets are placed after the Tag, as they are only received once the complete frame has been received. It is the responsibility of software to determine the address of the RSV in the buffer (RSV Address = Length + 1), and to discard/ignore the Tag octets.

3: The Message and Tag decryption operations do not depend on each other, and may be computed in any order. All other factors being equal, the Tag decryption operation should be performed first, because it uses the starting counter value.

5.4 Security Material Retrieval with IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames

This section explains how the security material (**Section 5.3 "Security Material"**) is retrieved when the MAC frame is formatted to the IEEE 802.15.4 specification (either FRMFMT = 0 or "bridging") and security is applied either at the MAC-layer or at the NWK-layer, or both.

The relevant configuration registers (SECSUITE<3:0>) are indicated in bold in Table 5-10. The relevant security fields (SecEn, SecLvl<2:0>, FrameVer<1:0>, FrameCnt, KeyIDMode, KeySrc, KeyIndex) are represented in bold in Figure 5-11.

SecEn = 1 selects MAC-layer security as shown in Table 5-13. The NWK-layer security is handled as different MAC-payload both security layers are selected then NWK-layer frame is secured first, constituting the MAC payload, the MAC-layer security processed for the MAC frame.

MAC-layer security material retrieval differs in the 2006 and the 2003 versions of the standard. Distinction is possible based on the FrameVer<1:0> field. Security Material retrieval is not supported by the device for beacon frames. Beacon frames are distinguished by the Type<2:0> field.

KeyIDMode, KeySrc, KeyIndex in the AuxSecHdr are done by software for the retrieval of the MAC-layer Symmetric Key, the details are out of scope.

FrameCnt, SecLvl and the 8-byte Source Address are used to construct the Nonce when 2006-MAC-Layer security is applied (Figure 5-12). In 2003 MAC Layer the Nonce field is constructed from the Source Address, FrameCnt and the KeySeqCnt as shown in Figure 5-13. When the frame contains a short Source Address, the Nonce will not be set correctly by the device. Similarly, if the frame is of Type = Beacon then the SECPAYINDX will not be set correctly. In these cases these registers need to be configured from software. On the RX side, this can be easily done before launching the security processing (RXDEC = 1). On the TX- side, DTSM must be set to prevent the device from over-writing the Nonce and Indexes configured by software.

The indexes are specified for the MAC-layer security only, because Network-layer security must always be configured by software:

In MAC-layer security, SECHDRINDX is always the first byte of the MHR.

In MAC-layer security applied for frames of type Data and Streaming SECPAYINDX is the first byte of the payload. For Command frames, SECPAYINDX is the second byte of the payload. SECPAYINDX can take different values for beacon frames, and should always be specified by software.

REGISTER 5-3: SECHDRINDX (SECURITY HEADER INDEX REGISTER)

R-0	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECHDRINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECHDRINDX<6:0>:** Security Header Index bits

This field defines the portion of the header over which authentication operations are performed. For MAC layer security, SECHDRINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the MAC Header from the beginning of the frame, as stored in the buffer (that is, 0 = Length field, 1 = FrameCtrl field, and so on), and is loaded automatically for both 802.15.4 and proprietary frames. For Network layer security, SECHDRINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the Network Header from the beginning of the MAC Payload, and must be loaded by the Host Controller for 802.15.4 frames only (for proprietary frames, the MAC automatically loads it)(1).

Note 1: The setting DTSM in TX mode will disable automatic computation of this field.

REGISTER 5-4: SECPAYINDX (SECURITY PAYLOAD INDEX REGISTER)

R-0	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECPAYINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECPAYINDX<6:0>:** Security Payload Index bits

This field defines the portion of the payload over which Encryption/Decryption operations are performed. For MAC layer security, SECPAYINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the MAC Payload from the beginning of the frame, as stored in the buffer (that is, 0 = Length field, 1 = FrameCtrl field, and so on), and is loaded automatically for both 802.15.4 and proprietary frames. For Network layer security, SECPAYINDX<6:0> is defined as the address offset of the Network Header from the beginning of the MAC Payload, and must be loaded by the Host Controller for 802.15.4 frames only (for proprietary frames, the MAC automatically loads it)(1).

Note 1: The setting DTSM in TX mode will disable automatic computation of this field.

REGISTER 5-5: SECENDINDX (SECURITY END INDEX REGISTER)

R-0	R/W/HS-0000000
r	SECENDINDX<6:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HS = Hardware Set		

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-0 **SECENDINDX<6:0>:** Security End Index bits

This field defines the end of the payload over which security operations are performed(1).

Note 1: The setting DTSM in TX mode will disable automatic computation of this field.

Figure 5-11 illustrates the construction of the Nonce in 802.15.4-mode.

FIGURE 5-11: IEEE.802.15.4™ SECURITY CONTROL FIELDS

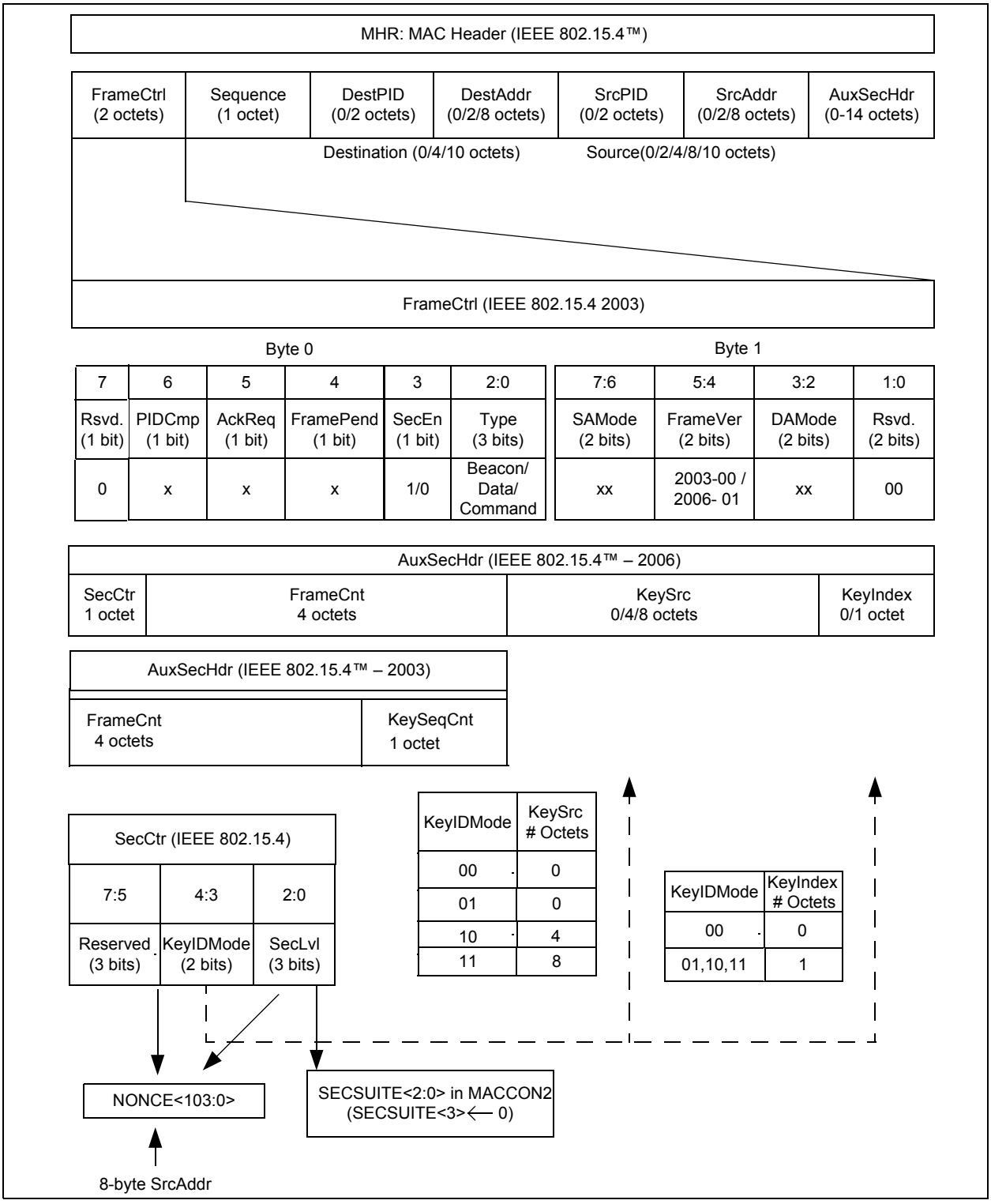
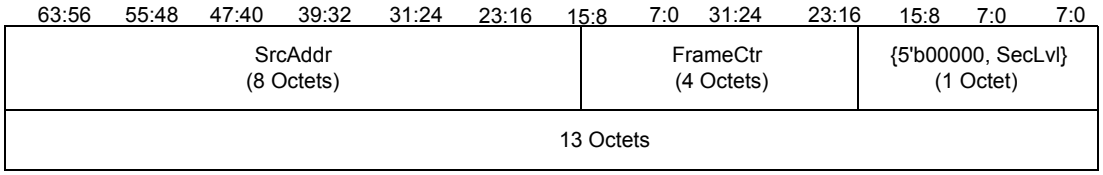
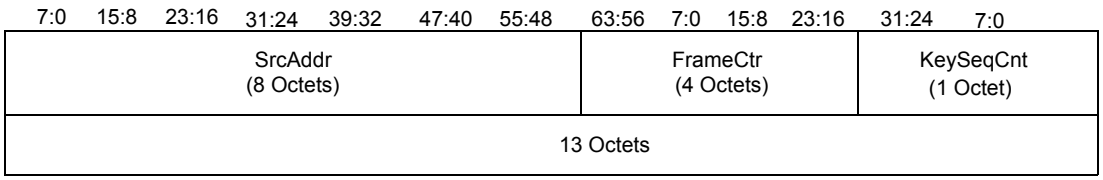


FIGURE 5-12: 802.15.4 CCM NONCE (MAC LAYER SECURITY ONLY)-2006



Note: The originator device automatically fills in SrcAddr field by the values of registers ADDR8 through ADDR1 irrespective of the SAMode. The recipient host needs to fill in the nonce if SAMode is different from '11'.

FIGURE 5-13: 802.15.4 CCM NONCE (MAC LAYER SECURITY ONLY)-2003



Note: The originator device automatically fills in SrcAddr field by the values of registers ADDR8 through ADDR1 irrespective of the SAMode. The recipient host needs to fill in the nonce if SAMode is different from '11'.

5.5 Transmit Security Processing of IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames

Setting TXST triggers automatic MAC layer security processing and frame sending as an uninterrupted sequence (see Figure 5-14). Separate security processing (network layer), triggered by TXENC can be applied, where TXENCIF should be awaited before other operation.

The security functions triggered by TXST, BUF1TXPP (used for debug), BUF2TXPP (used for debug), and TXENC are shown in Figure 5-12 and Figure 5-14. The respective interrupts are generated on completion and the aforementioned triggering bits are cleared by the device automatically. In Figure 5-12, observe the conditions for security material retrieval by the device and the operation of the DTSM bit.

FIGURE 5-14: TRANSMIT SECURITY PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 0 (IEEE 802.15.4™ FORMAT)

Before launching the transmit processing (Figure 4-8):

- SW always configures SECKEY
- SW may configure SECSUITE, SECNONCE, SECHDRINDX, SECPAYINDX, SECENDINDX

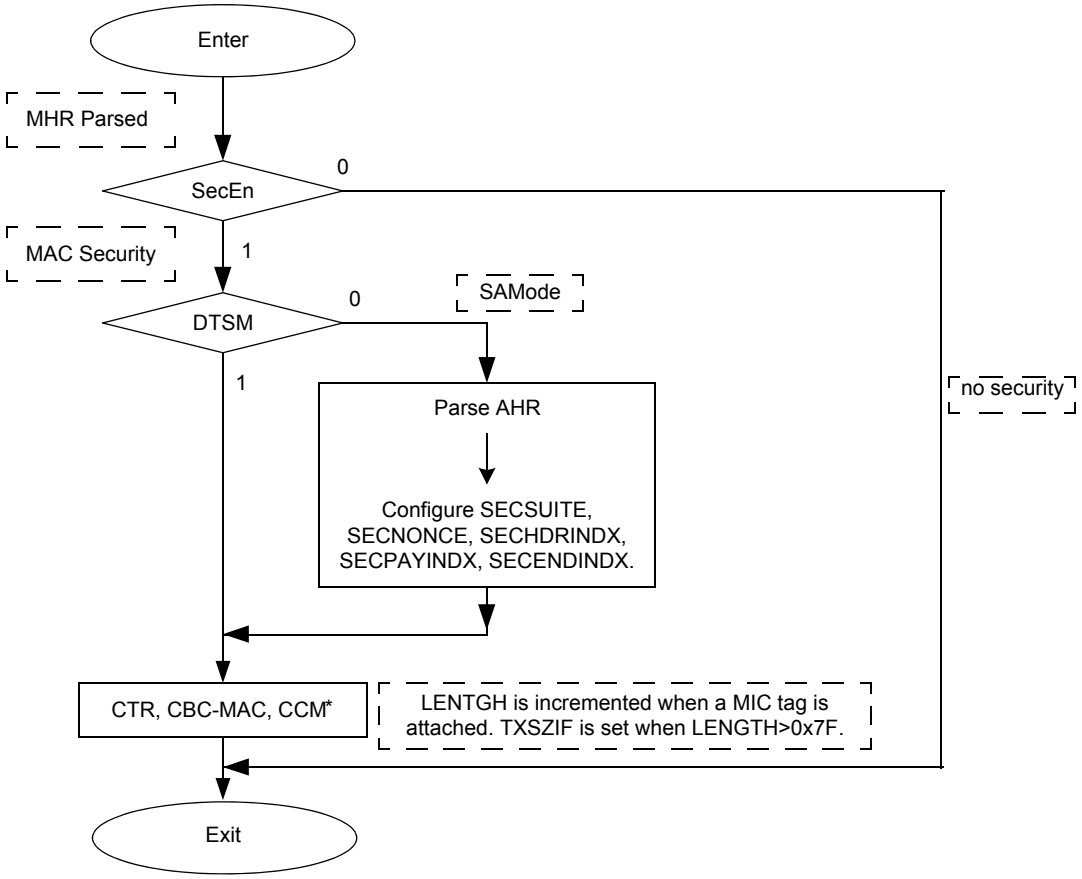
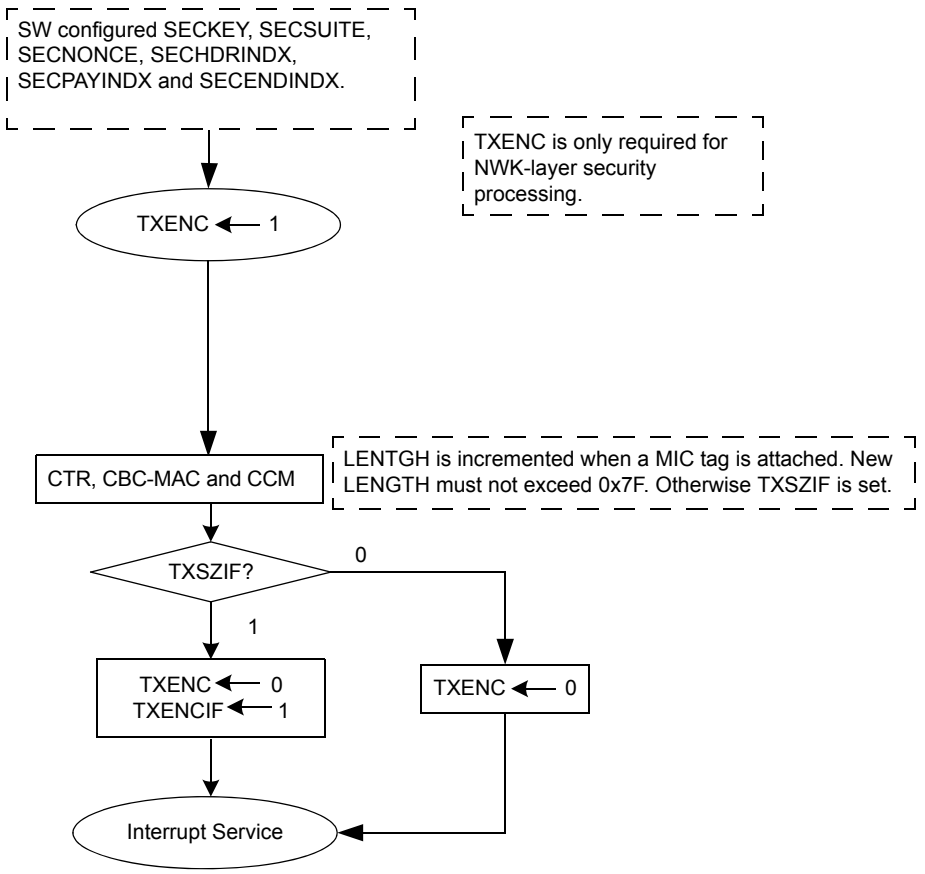


FIGURE 5-15: TRANSMITTER TXENC PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 0 (IEEE 802.15.4™ FORMAT)



Length is affected. MAC MAC/NWK.

Exception Handling:

TXSZIF: Transmit Packet Size Error Interrupt Flag

TXST is set when the packet size (including MIC tags and CRC) is found to be zero or to be greater than the maximum size that the buffers can support.

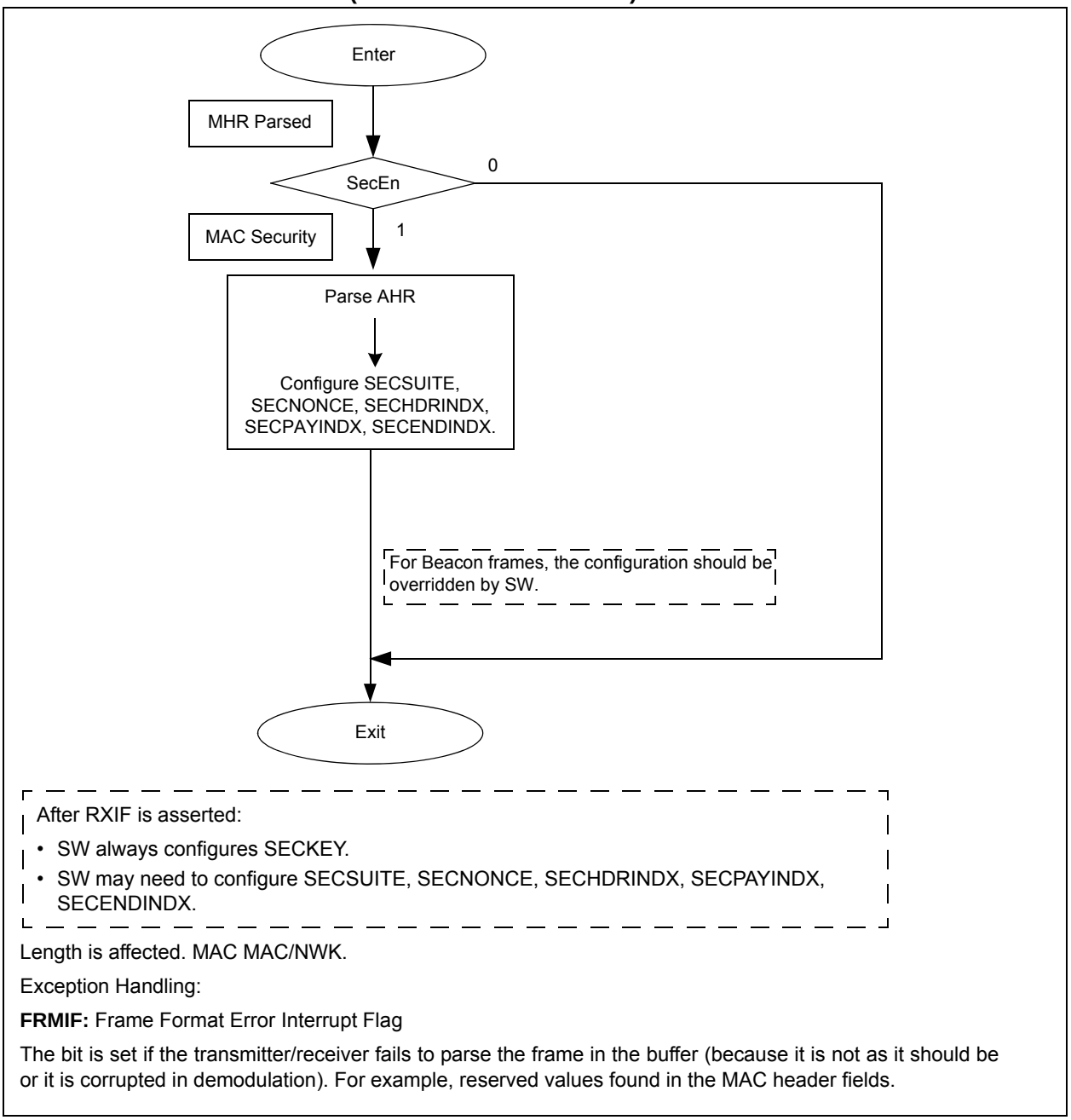
FRMIF: Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag

5.6 Security Processing of Received IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames

Receive security is always performed by setting RXDEC and awaiting RXDECIF or RXTAGIF. It is never triggered automatically. When both MAC and NWK-layer security are applied, then both shall be processed (in this order) by setting RXDEC a second time after the security material has been updated correctly.

The security functions triggered by RXDEC are shown in Figure 5-17. The respective interrupts generated on completion and RXDEC is cleared by the device automatically.

FIGURE 5-16: SECURITY MATERIAL RETRIEVAL SUPPORT IN RECEIVE PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 0 (IEEE 802.15.4™ FORMAT)



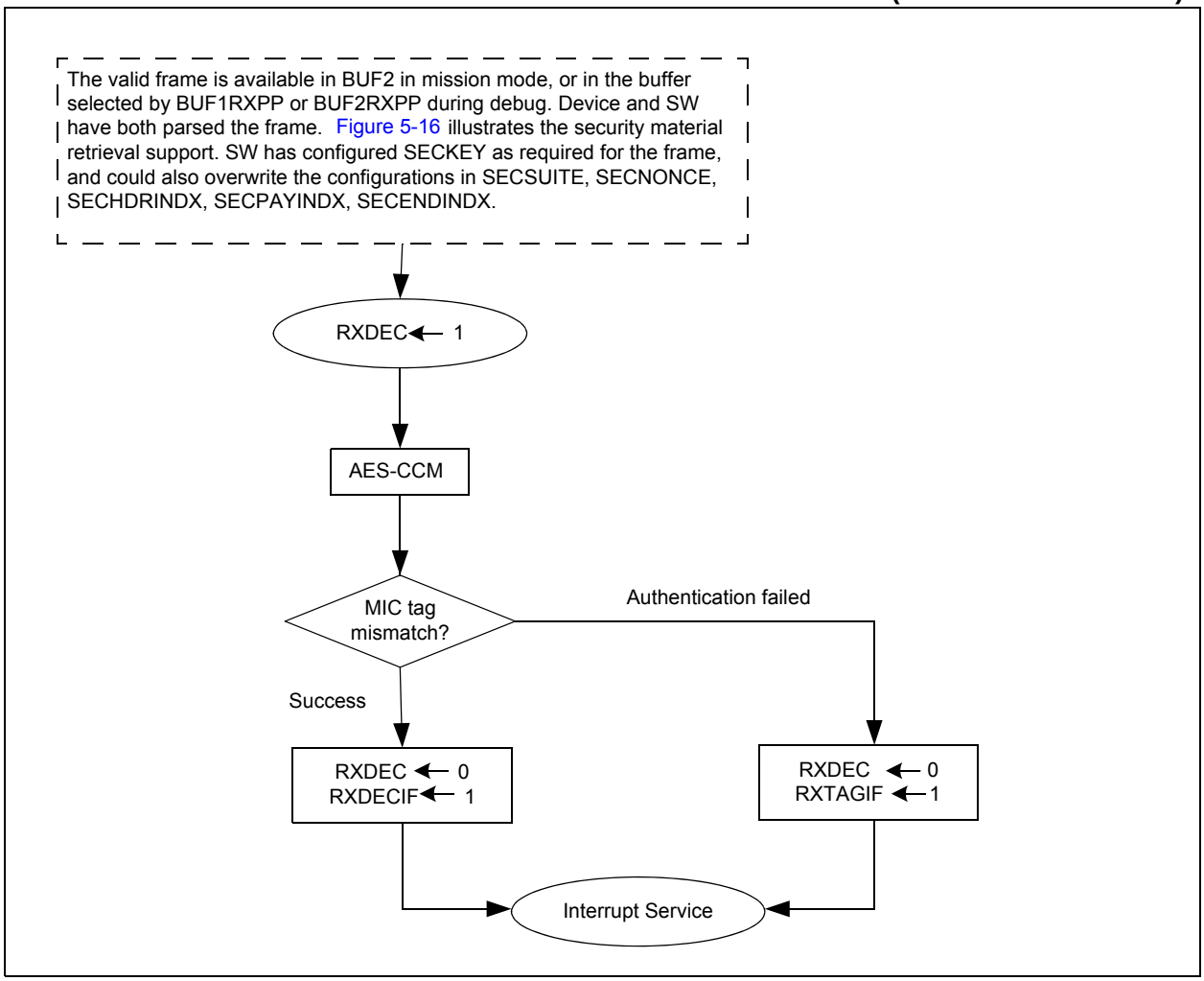
Length is affected. MAC MAC/NWK.

Exception Handling:

FRMIF: Frame Format Error Interrupt Flag

The bit is set if the transmitter/receiver fails to parse the frame in the buffer (because it is not as it should be or it is corrupted in demodulation). For example, reserved values found in the MAC header fields.

FIGURE 5-17: RECEIVER RXDEC PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 0 (IEEE 802.15.4™-MODE)



5.7 Security Procedure for IEEE 802.15.4 Compliant Frames

For more information about the frame format, refer to Table 5-12 through Table 5-14 and Figure 5-3.

TABLE 5-11: RELEVANT REGISTER BITS FOR SECURITY CONTROL WITH IEEE 802.15.4™ FRAMES

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
MACCON1	TRXMODE<1:0>		ADDRSZ<2:0>			CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

TABLE 5-12: DEFINITION OF SECURITY SUPPORT CATEGORIES (IEEE 802.15.4™ FRAMES)

Security Support Category	SecEn	FrameVer <1:0>	Type<2:0> (and SAMode)	Description
0	0	0x	Data/Cmd/Beacon/Ack	No security
A	1	0x	Data/Cmd	2003/2006 MAC-layer security only
B	1	0x	Beacon	2003/2006 MAC-layer secured beacon
C	0	0x	Data/(Cmd)/Beacon	NWK-layer security only
D	1	0x	Data/Cmd	NWK + 2003/2006 MAC-layer security
E	1	0x	Beacon	NWK + 2003/2006 MAC-layer security for beacon frames

TABLE 5-13: SECURED FRAME TRANSMISSION (IEEE 802.15.4™ MAC FORMAT)

#	Processing Step	Steps per each Security Case				
		A	B	C	D	E
1	Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer	SecEn = 1 FrameVer = 0x (either)	SecEn = 1 FrameVe = 0x (either)	SecEn = 0 FrameVer = 0x (either)	SecEn = 1 FrameVer = 0x (either)	SecEn = 1 FrameVer = 0x (either)
2	For NWK-security processing, Host MCU configures:	No NWK-layer security.		SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX(1) NONCE	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE
3	Host MCU triggers security processing without sending.			TXENC ← 1	TXENC ← 1	TXENC ← 1
4	Security processing is performed by the device for NWK layer if TXENC is set. LENGTH and SECENDINDX are updated if MIC takg is appended. TXSZIF if size run over 127 bytes			NWK-layer Security LENGTH, SECENDINDX	NWK-layer Security LENGTH, SECENDINDX	NWK-layer Security LENGTH, SECENDINDX
5	Host MCU awaits TXENCIF interrupt, indicating completion. (TXENC cleared by the device.)			TXENCIF ← 1 TXENC ← 0	TXENCIF ← 1 TXENC ← 0	TXENCIF ← 1 TXENC ← 0
6	For MAC-security processing, Host MCU configures:	SECKEY (+NONCE, if SAMode is not 11) (+SECSUITE, if FRAMEVER=2003)	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	No MAC security	SECKEY (+NONCE, if SAMode is not 11) (+SECSUITE, if FRAMEVER=2003)	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE
7	Host MCU sets DTSM to inhibit the hardware from overwriting just configured SECSUITE, SEC*INDX and NONCE registers.	DTSM = 0 (=1, if SAMode is not 11)	DTSM = 1	DTSM = x	DTSM = 0 (=1, if SAMode is not 11)	DTSM = 1
8	Host MCU triggers Security processing and Sending	TXST ← 1	TXST ← 1	TXST ← 1	TXST ← 1	TXST ← 1
9	If SecEn = 1 and DTSM = 0, then the device configures the SECSUITE, SEC*INDX and NONCE registers.	SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	—	—	SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	—
10	Security processing is performed by the device for MAC layer: LENGTH is adjusted if MIC tag is appended. TXSZIF if size run over 127 bytes	MAC-layer Security LENGTH, if MIC added	MAC-layer Security LENGTH, if MIC added	—	MAC-layer Security LENGTH, if MIC added	MAC-layer Security LENGTH, if MIC added
11	LENGTH is adjusted as CRC is appended (if CRCSZ = 1). TXSZIF if size run over 127 bytes	LENGTH, CRC				
12	Frame is sent	TXIF (if no TXSZIF or FRMIF) TXST ← 0				

Note 1: SEC*INDX denotes SECHDRINDX, SECPAYINDX and SECENDINDX.

TABLE 5-14: SECURED FRAME RECEPTION (IEEE 802.15.4™ MAC FORMAT)

#	Processing Step	Steps per each security case				
		A	B	C	D	E
-2	Device has parses the SecEn bit in the FrameCtrl	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 0	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1
-1	For MAC-security processing, the device configures (correctly or incorrectly) the following:	SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	incorrect configuration	No MAC-layer security	SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	incorrect configuration
0	Valid frame received on air and accepted by RXFILTER	RXIF = 1, RXBUFFUL = 1, (RXSFDIF = 1)				
1	Host MCU has the opportunity to check the SecEn, FrameVer and SAMode bits in the MAC header	FrameVer = 0x (either)	FrameVer = 0x (either)	FrameVer = 0x (either)	FrameVer = 0x (either)	FrameVer = 0x (either)
2	For MAC-security processing, the Host MCU must load the following:	SECKEY (+NONCE if SAMode is not 11)	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	No MAC-layer Security	SECKEY (+NONCE if SAMode is not 11)	SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE
3	Host MCU starts MAC-security processing by setting RXDEC.	RXDEC ← 1	RXDEC ← 1		RXDEC ← 1	RXDEC ← 1
4	Device performs MAC-layer security processing as illustrated in Figure 5-4 through Figure 5-9	MAC-layer	MAC-layer		MAC-layer	MAC-layer
5	If Authentication fails then RXTAGIF is generated otherwise the security operation is successful and RXDECIF is generated.	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF)	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF)		RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF)	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF)
6	SW examines RXTAGIF, if set, SW aborts further processing and frees the buffer by clearing RXBUFFUL.	RXTAGIF ← 1	RXTAGIF ← 1		RXTAGIF ← 1	RXTAGIF ← 1
7	For NWK-security processing, the Host MCU must load the following:	No NWK-layer security		SECKEY SECSUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	SECKEY SEC-SUITE SEC*INDX NONCE	SECKEY SEC-SUITE SEC*INDX NONCE
8	Host MCU starts NWK-security processing by setting RXDEC.			RXDEC ← 1	RXDEC ← 1	RXDEC ← 1
9	Device performs NWK layer security processing. (No figure)			NWK-layer security	NWK-layer security	NWK-layer security
10	If Authentication fails then RXTAGIF is generated otherwise the security operation is successful and RXDECIF is generated. RXDEC is cleared by the device.			RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0
11	SW examines RXTAGIF, if set, SW aborts further processing and frees the buffer by clearing RXBUFFUL	For the length				
12	SW reads the entire frame from the buffer.	—				
13	SW clears the RXBUFFUL to free the buffer	—				

5.8 Security Examples

The following section provides examples for the usage of MRF24XA security.

5.8.1 802.15.4-2006 COMPLIANT FRAME ANNEX C.2.2 (TYPE A)

Configuration:

- Network configuration: Extended address, PAN Compression, and ACKReq
- Source address: 0xACDE480000000001, where 01 is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0xACDE480000000002
- PANID 0x4321, where 21 is at address 0x29
- Payload: 61 62 63 64
- Frame counter: 0x00000005
- Security level: 0x04
- Packet: Data packet

5.8.1.1 Transmission

For 802.15.4-2006 compliant, follow these transmission flow:

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   1E || 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 05 00 00 00 || 61 62 63 64
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures SECKEY

   0xC0C1C2C3C4C5C6C7C8C9CACBCCCDCECF, where LSB (0xCF) is at address 0x40
7. Host MCU clears DTSM
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x04
   - SECNONCE to 0xACDE4800000000010000000504, where MSB (0xAC) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1B
   - SECENDINDX to 0x1E
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* encryption, where

    61 62 63 64 is encrypted to D4 3E 02 2B
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x18E0
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. MRF24XA is waiting for an ACKnowledge frame. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    20 || 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 05 00 00 00 || D4 3E 02 2B || E0 18

5.8.1.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   20 || 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 05 00 00 00 || D4 3E 02 2B || E0 18
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x04
   - SECNONCE to 0xACDE4800000000010000000504, where MSB (0xAC) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1B
   - SECENDINDX to 0x1E
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF):
   - Packet accepted by RX filter
   - ACK frame: 05 || 02 10 84 || 05 E2 sent to medium (asserts TXSFD, TXMAIF)
4. —
5. Host MCU downloads SECKEY

   0xC0C1C2C3C4C5C6C7C8C9CACBCCCDCECF, where LSB (0xCF) is at address 0x40
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* decryption, D4 3E 02 2B is decrypted to 61 62 63 64
8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. —
11. —
12. —
13. —
14. —
15. SW read the entire frame from the Rx Buffer (0x300):

    20 || 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 05 00 00 00 || 61 62 63 64 || E0 18 || RSVs

5.8.2 802.15.4-2006 COMPLIANT FRAME ANNEX C.2.3 (TYPE A)

- Network configuration: Extended address, ACKReq
- Source address: 0xACDE480000000001, where 01 is at address 0x1F
- Source PANID: 0X4321, where 21 is at address 0x29
- Destination address: 0xACDE480000000002
- Destination PANID: 0xFFFF
- Payload: 01 CE
- Frame counter: 0x00000005
- Security level: 0x06
- Packet: Command packet

5.8.2.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   1E || 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 05 00 00 00 || 01 CE
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures SECKEY

   0xC0C1C2C3C4C5C6C7C8C9CACBCCCDCECF, where LSB (0xCF) is at address 0x40
7. Host MCU clears DTSM register
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x06
   - SECNONCE to 0xACDE4800000000010000000504, where MSB (0xAC) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1E (remember when Type = CMD, first octet of payload is not encrypted)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x1E
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where 01 CE is encrypted to 01 D8, and the following MIC tag is attached:

    4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x4FE4
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. MRF24XA is waiting for an ACK frame. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    28 || 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 05 00 00 00 || 01 D8 || 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1 || E4 4F

5.8.2.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   28 || 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 05 00 00 00 || 01 D8 || 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1 || E4 4F
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x06
   - SECNONCE to 0xACDE4800000000010000000504, where MSB (0xAC) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1E
   - SECENDINDX to 0x26
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF):
   - Packet accepted by RX filter
   - ACK frame: 05 || 02 10 84 || 05 E2 sent to medium (asserts TXSFD, TXMAIF)
4. —
5. Host MCU downloads SECKEY

   0xC0C1C2C3C4C5C6C7C8C9CACBCCCDCECF, where LSB (0xCF) is at address 0x40
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and 01 D8 is decrypted to 01 CE
8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. —
11. —
12. —
13. —
14. —
15. SW can read the entire frame from Rx Buffer (0x300):

    28 || 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 05 00 00 00 || 01 CE || 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1 || E4 4F || RSVs

5.8.3 NWK-LAYER SECURITY (TYPE C)

- Network configuration: Extended address
- Source address: N/A
- Source PANID: N/A
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Destination PANID: 0xD2D1
- Network header: 41 41
- Network payload: 14 14
- Network security level: 0x06
- Packet: Data packet

5.8.3.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   11 || 01 0C 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 41 41 14 14
2. Host MCU configures security materials:
   - SECSUITE register to 0x06
   - SECNONCE register to 0xFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1, where MSB (0xFD) is at address 0x5C
   - SECKEY register to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A0908070605040302010, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECHDRINDX register to 0x0E
   - SECPAYINDX register to 0x10
   - SECENDINDX register to 0x11
3. Host MCU issues TXENC
4. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where 14 14 is encrypted to 14 DA, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6
5. MRF24XA asserts TXENCIF (and IDLEIF)
6. —
7. —
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. —
10. —
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x9BC9
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    1B || 01 0C 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 41 41 14 DA 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 || C9 9B

5.8.3.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   1B || 01 0C 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 41 41 14 DA 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 || C9 9B
2. —
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. —
8. —
9. —
10. Host MCU configures security materials:
    - SECSUITE to 0x06
    - SECNONCE to 0xFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1, where MSB (0xFD) is at address 0x5C
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A0908070605040302010, where 00 is at address 0x40
    - SECHDRINDX to 0x0E
    - SECPAYINDX to 0x10
11. Host MCU issues RXDEC
12. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one and 14 DA is decrypted to 14 14
13. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
14. —
15. SW can read the entire frame from Rx Buffer (0x300):

    1B || 01 0C 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 41 41 14 14 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 || C9 9B || RSVS

5.8.4 802.15.4-2006 COMPLIANT FRAME WITH NWK-LAYER SECURITY (TYPE D)

- Network configuration: Extended address
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Source PANID: 0xC2C1, where LSB (0xC1) is at address 0x29
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Destination PANID: 0xD2D1
- Network header: 41 41
- Network payload: 14 14
- Network security level: 0x06
- Frame counter: 0x55555555
- Security level: 0x07
- Packet: Command packet

5.8.4.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   20 || 09 DC 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 C1 C2 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 07 55 55 55 55 || 41 41 14 14

2. Host MCU configures security materials for NWK:
   - SECSUITE register to 0x06
   - SECNONCE register to 0xFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1, where MSB (0xFD) is at address 0x5C
   - SECKEY register to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A0908070605040302010, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECHDRINDX register to 0x1D
   - SECPAYINDX register to 0x1F
   - SECENDINDX register to 0x20
3. Host MCU issues TXENC
4. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where 41 41 14 14 is encrypted to 41 41 14 DA, and the following MIC tag is attached: 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 MIC-TAG
5. MRF24XA asserts TXENCIF (and IDLEIF)
6. Host MCU downloads SECKEY

   0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
7. Host MCU clears DTSM register
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555507, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1D
   - SECENDINDX to 0x38
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where 41 41 14 DA 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 is encrypted to C9 87 C6 D8 7F E4 BD A2 A4 00 89 9F, and the following MIC tag is attached:

    B4 E6 9C B1 54 7F 9B B3 4089 77 FB 93 34 E2 D6
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x1AA8
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    3A || 09 DC 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 C1 C2 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 07 55 55 55 55 || C9 87 C6 D8 7F E4 BD A2 A4 00 89 9F B4 E6 9C B1 54 7F 9B B3 40 89 77 FB 93 34 E2 D6 || A8 1A

5.8.4.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   3A || 09 DC 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 C1 C2 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 07 55 55 55 55 || C9 87 C6 D8 7F E4 BD A2 A4 00 89 9F B4 E6 9C B1 54 7F 9B B3 40 89 77 FB 93 34 E2 D6 || A8 1A
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555507, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1D
   - SECENDINDX to 0x38
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures SECKEY

   0xC0C1C2C3C4C5C6C7C8C9CACBCCCDCECF, where LSB (0xCF) is at address 0x40
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and C9 87 C6 D8 7F E4 BD A2 A4 00 89 9F is decrypted to 41 41 14 DA 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6

8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. Host MCU configures security materials:
    - SECSUITE to 0x06
    - SECNONCE to 0xFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1, where MSB (0xFD) is at address 0x5C
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A0908070605040302010, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECHDRINDX to 0x1D
    - SECPAYINDX to 0x1F
11. Host MCU issues RXDEC
12. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and 14 DA is decrypted to 14 14.
13. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
14. —
15. SW can read the entire frame from the RxBuffer (0x300):

    3A || 09 DC 14 D1 D2 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 C1 C2 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 07 55 55 55 55 || 41 41 14 14 53 99 39 A1 55 C5 D3 F6 B4 E6 9C B1 54 7F 9B B3 40 89 77 FB 93 34 E2 D6 || A8 1A || RSVs

5.8.5 802.15.4-2003 COMPLIANT FRAME (TYPE A)

- Network configuration: Extended address, PAN compression
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where 01 is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0xAAAAAAAAAAAAAAAA
- PANID: 0x3412 where 12 is at address 0x29
- Payload: FF
- Frame counter: 0x0403020100
- Key sequence counter: 0x12
- Security level: CCM-32 (SecLevel: 0x05)
- Packet: Data packet

5.8.5.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   1B || 49 CC 01 12 34 AA AA AA AA AA AA AA AA 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 01 02 03 04 05 || FF
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures SECKEY:

   0x000102030405060708090A0B0C0D0E0F, where LSB (0x0F) is at address 0x40
7. Host MCU clears DTSM
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECNONCE to 0x0102030405060708010203040 5, where MSB (0x01) is at address 0x5C
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x1B
   - SECENDINDX to 0x1B
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where FF is encrypted to AC, and the following MIC tag is attached:

    FC 30 DB BD
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0xEB32
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium

    Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA)

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

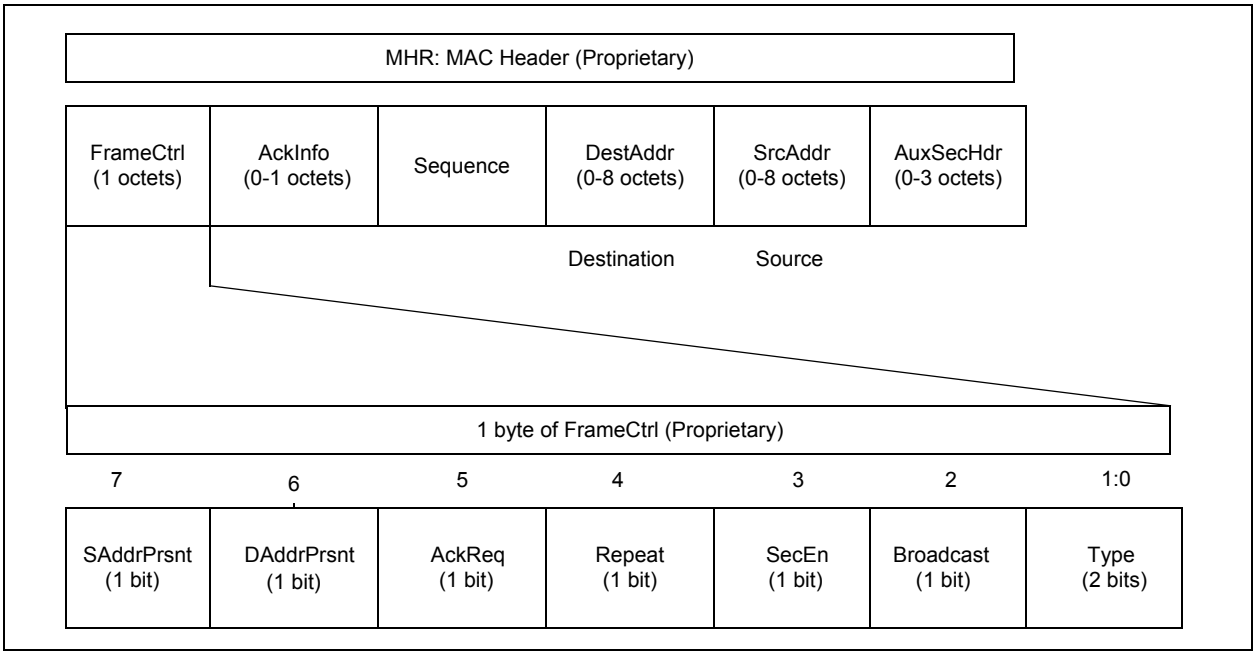
    21 || 49 CC 01 12 34 AA AA AA AA AA AA AA AA 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 01 02 03 04 05 || AC FC 30 DB BD || 32 EB

6.0 PROPRIETARY FRAME FORMAT AND FRAME PROCESSING

6.1 Proprietary MAC Frame Configuration

The proprietary MAC header structure is shown in Figure 6-1. The specific format of Acknowledge frame is shown in Figure 6-2. The frame buffer is written with the LENGTH field byte first, followed by the FrameCtrl field. An optional Acknowledge info field can be sent before the SEQUENCE.

FIGURE 6-1: PROPRIETARY MAC HEADER STRUCTURE



6.2 Frame Types

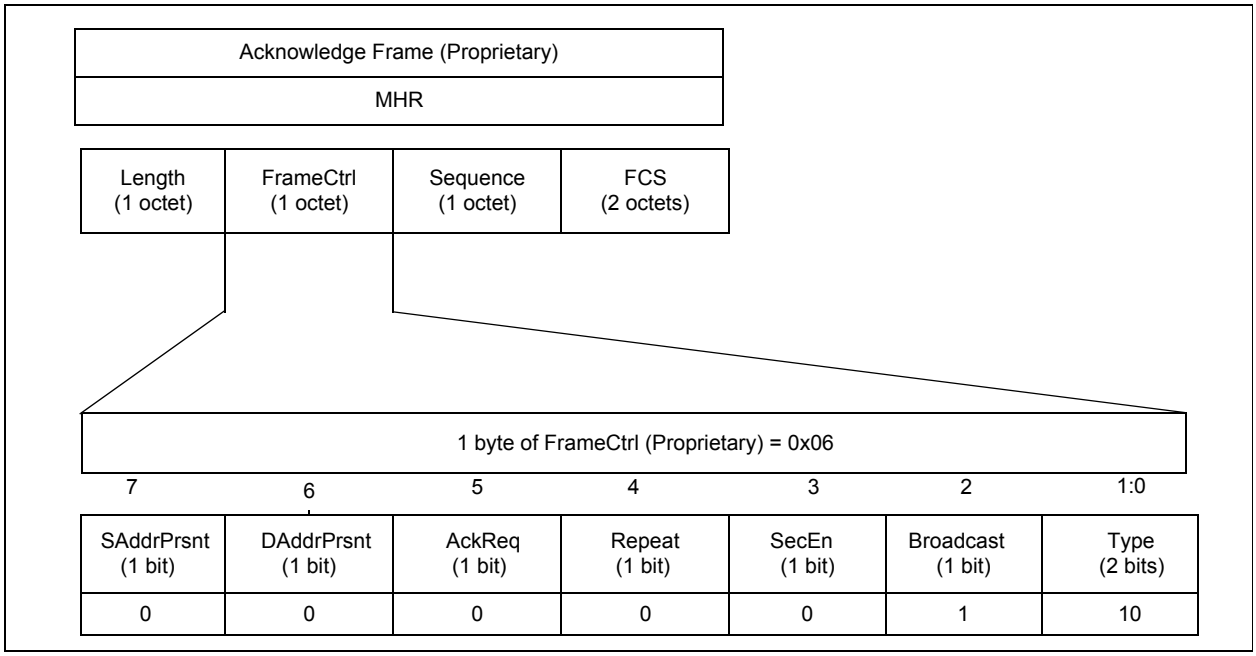
TABLE 6-1: FRAME TYPES (BOTH PROTOCOLS)

Frame Type	IEEE	Mi-Wi	Description
Data	001	01	Filtered by DATAREJ
Command	011	11	Filtered by CMDREJ First byte of payload (Command) is never encrypted.
Ack	010	10	Acknowledge Frame Must be generated by the receiver (from SW or HW) if and only if Ack-Req = 1 in the last received frame, using the same sequence number. Acknowledge Frame can be generated by hardware (AUTOACKEN = 1). If this is the case it is not loaded to the TX frame buffer. AUTOACKEN = 1 requires CRCSZ = 1 on both the transmitter and the receiver side.
Beacon	000 (limited HW support)	N/A	Filtered by BCREJ Otherwise, this device does not provide support for parsing on beacon frames. Security processing requires adjusting the payload index (SECPAYINDX). Beacon frames are used with broadcast addressing only.

TABLE 6-1: FRAME TYPES (BOTH PROTOCOLS) (CONTINUED)

Frame Type	IEEE	Mi-Wi	Description
Streaming	N/A	00	TRXMODE= 01 by transmitter TRXMODE= 10 by receiver The two buffers are handled in ping-pong, to service a single direction. Security parsing makes no distinction between Streaming frames and Data frames. Streaming frames are never acknowledged.

FIGURE 6-2: PROPRIETARY MAC HEADER STRUCTURE: ACKNOWLEDGE FRAME



6.3 Addressing in Proprietary Framing Mode

The following fields are handled by the example:

- Header
- Sequence number
- Address
- Data/Command
- CRC
- Inferred Destination Addressing: The Destination Address participates in the CRC computation as part of the frame, but it is omitted from the frame that is sent on air.

TABLE 6-2: RELEVANT REGISTERS FOR PROPRIETARY MODE ADDRESSING

ADDR.	REGISTER	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
0x10	MACCON1	TRXMODE<1:0>		ADDRSZ<2:0>			CRCSZ	FRMFMT	SECFLAGOVR
0x1F	ADDR1	ADDR<7:0>							
0x20	ADDR2	ADDR<15:8>							
0x21	ADDR3	ADDR<23:16>							
0x22	ADDR4	ADDR<31:24>							
0x23	ADDR5	ADDR<39:32>							
0x24	ADDR6	ADDR<47:40>							
0x25	ADDR7	ADDR<55:48>							
0x26	ADDR8	ADDR<63:56>							

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

TABLE 6-3: EXAMPLE CONFIGURATION

TX and RX Common	ADDRSZ<2:0>= 101 => (means that ADDR<63:40> will not be used)
TX (Source) Configuration	ADDR<63:0>= 0xxxxx060504030201 (4 MSBs not used) SHADDR<15:0> = xx xx (not used) PANID <15:0> = xx xx (not used)
RX (Destination) Configuration	ADDR<63:0>= 0xxxxx969594939291 (4 MSBs not used) SHADDR<15:0> = xx xx (not used) PANID <15:0> = xx xx (not used)
FrameCtrl	Type<1:0> | Broadcast| 0 | 0 | 0 | DAPrsnt | SAPrsnt Type is not Acknowledge (not = 00)
Frame	Length | FrameCtrl | Sequence++ | DEST | SRC | Payload | (CRC)

TABLE 6-4: LEGAL DESTINATION ADDRESSING OPTIONS USING THE EXAMPLE

Options:	Broadcast	Unicast	
		ADDRSZ<2:0>	Inferred
Example DEST.	—	0x969594939291	—
Type	xx	xx	xx
Broadcast	1	0	0
DAPrsn	x	1	0
ADDRSZ<2:0>	xxx	3'b101	xxx
CRCSZ	x	xx	1

TABLE 6-5: LEGAL SOURCE ADDRESSING OPTIONS USING THE EXAMPLE

Options:	Unicast	
	ADDRSZ<2:0>	Inferred
Example SRC.	0x060504030201	—
Type	xx	xx
SAPrsnt	0	0
ADDRSZ<2:0>	3'b101	xxx

REGISTER 6-1: RXFILTER (RX FILTER REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
PANCRDN	CRCREJ	CMDREJ	DATAREJ	UNIREJ	NOTMEREJ	BCREJ	NSTDREJ
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-6 Out of Scope

bit 5 **CMDREJ:** Command Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl<Type> equal to Command.

1 = Reject all Command packets
0 = Disable Command Frame Rejection

bit 4 **DATAREJ:** Data Frame Reject Enable bit

Setting this bit allows the user to reject all packets with FrameCtrl<Type> equal to Data.

1 = Reject all Data packets
0 = Disable Data Frame Rejection

bit 3-0 Out of Scope

6.3.1 INFERRED DESTINATION ADDRESSING

Inferred destination addressing is indicated in the proprietary frame format by the combination of DAddrPresent = 0 and Broadcast = 0 flags in the frame header (FrameControl Field) and CRCSZ = 1 in the MACCON1 register.

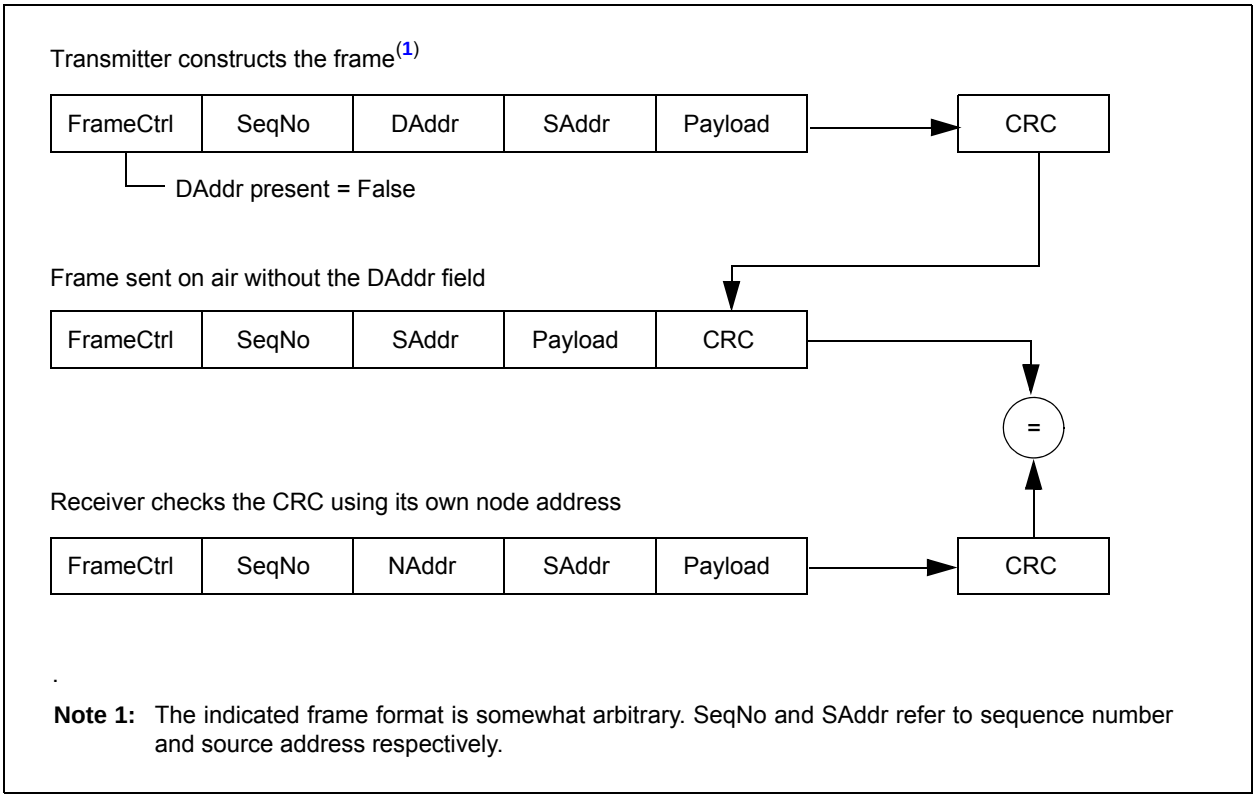
The transmitter calculates the CRC over the complete frame (Figure 6-3) but drops the Destination Address (DAddr) from the transmitted one (Figure 6-4). The receiver checks the CRC with its own address inserted.

In the case of a match the frame is accepted, otherwise it is silently discarded. This way CRC filtering takes over the role of Address-Match filtering.

Because the framing overhead becomes shorter, the duty-cycle of the radio gets decreased or the through-put gets increased. Therefore the energy consumed by sending a single byte can outweigh the energy budget of hundreds of MCU byte-operations, the impact on battery life is straightforward.

Note, that in case of Inferred DA, the ACKINFO field is mandatory when AckReq = 1. Otherwise, the ACKINFO field is mandatory only if ADPTDREN = 1 or ADPTCHEN = 1.

FIGURE 6-3: INFERRED DESTINATION ADDRESS MODE

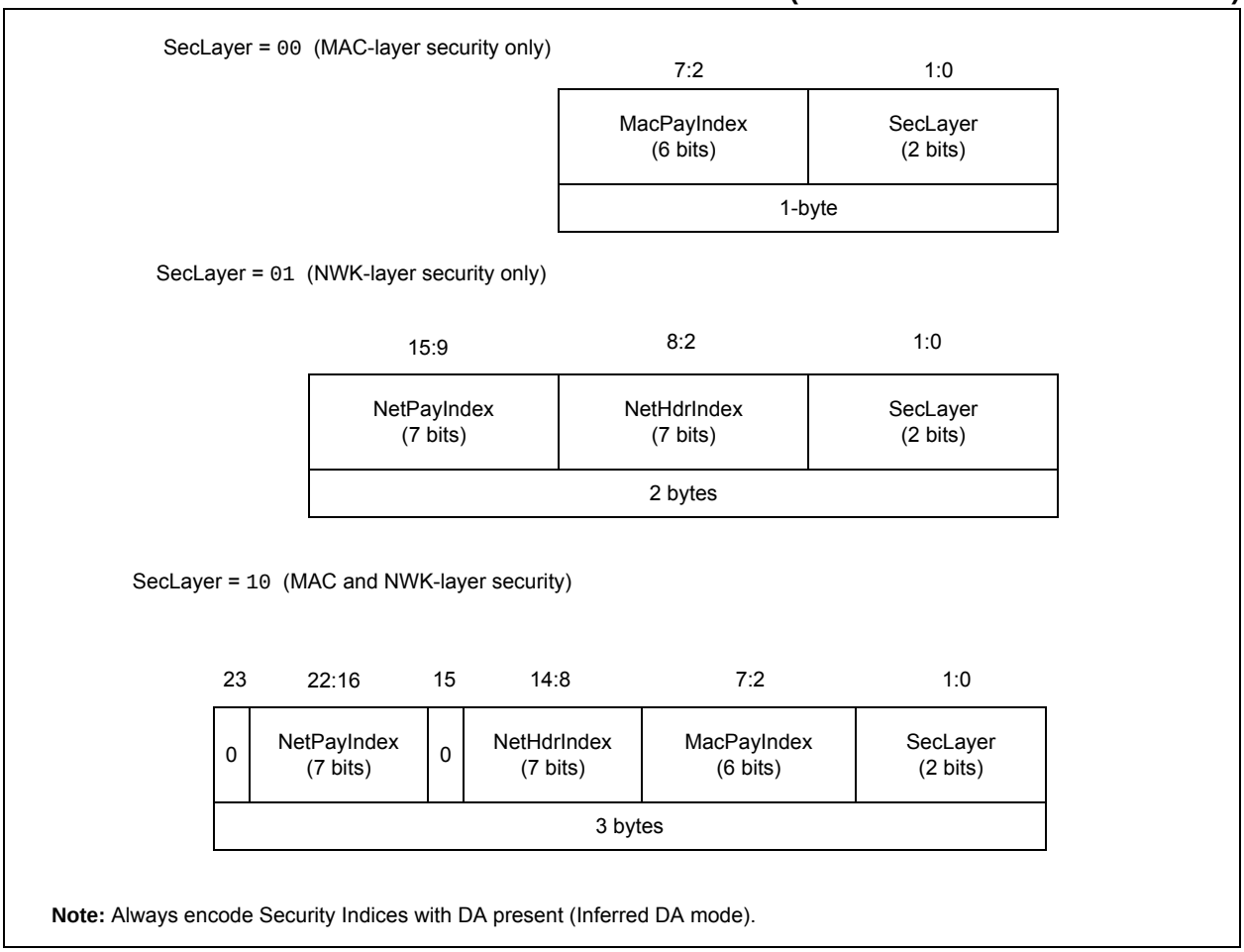


.

Note 1: The indicated frame format is somewhat arbitrary. SeqNo and SAddr refer to sequence number and source address respectively.

6.4 Security Material Retrieval Support with Proprietary Frames

FIGURE 6-4: PROPRIETARY MAC AUXSECHDR OCTETS (ONLY PRESENT WHEN SECEN = 1)



Note: Always encode Security Indices with DA present (Inferred DA mode).

As the MacPayIndex and NetPayIndex fields can point anywhere in the frame (within the range of pointer representation), it is the arbitrary choice of the application weather the Nonce and the Security Suite is included in the frame or not.

6.5 Security Processing of Transmitted Proprietary Frames

Setting TXST triggers automatic security processing and frame sending as an uninterrupted sequence (Figure 6-5). Separate security processing, triggered by TXENC, is only required when both NWK-layer and MAC-layer security are applied (Figure 6-6). In this case, TXENC is set to perform NWK-layer security and TXENCIF shall be awaited, then MAC security is configured and TXST is set to launch the MAC-security processing and the sending.

The security functions triggered by TXST, BUF1TXPP (used for debug), BUF2TXPP (used for debug), and TXENC are shown in Figure 6-5 and Figure 6-6. The respective interrupts generated on completion and that the aforementioned triggering bits are cleared by the device automatically. Figure 6-5 illustrates the conditions for security material retrieval by the device.

FIGURE 6-5: TRANSMIT SECURITY PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 1 (PROPRIETARY–FORMAT)

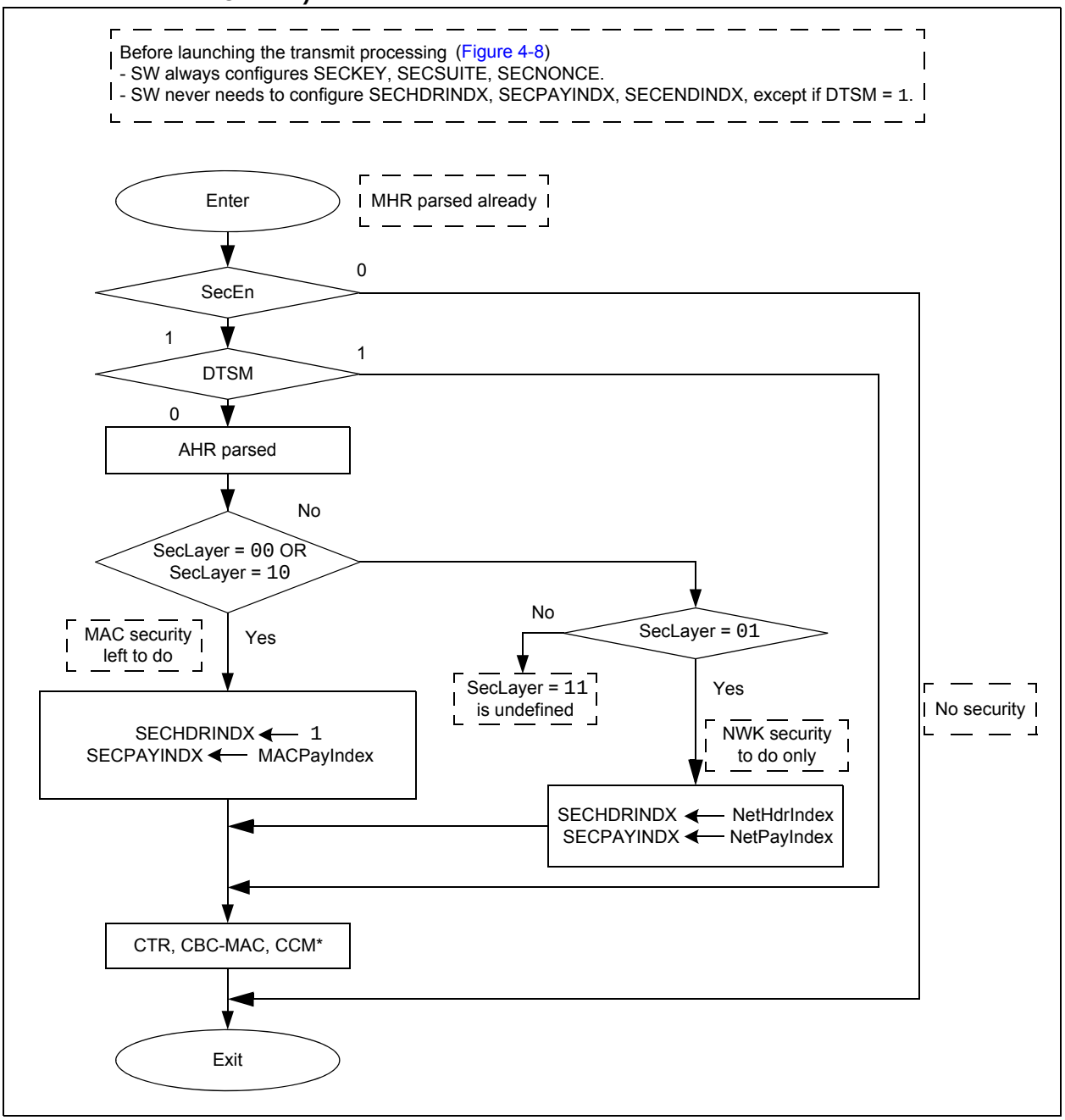
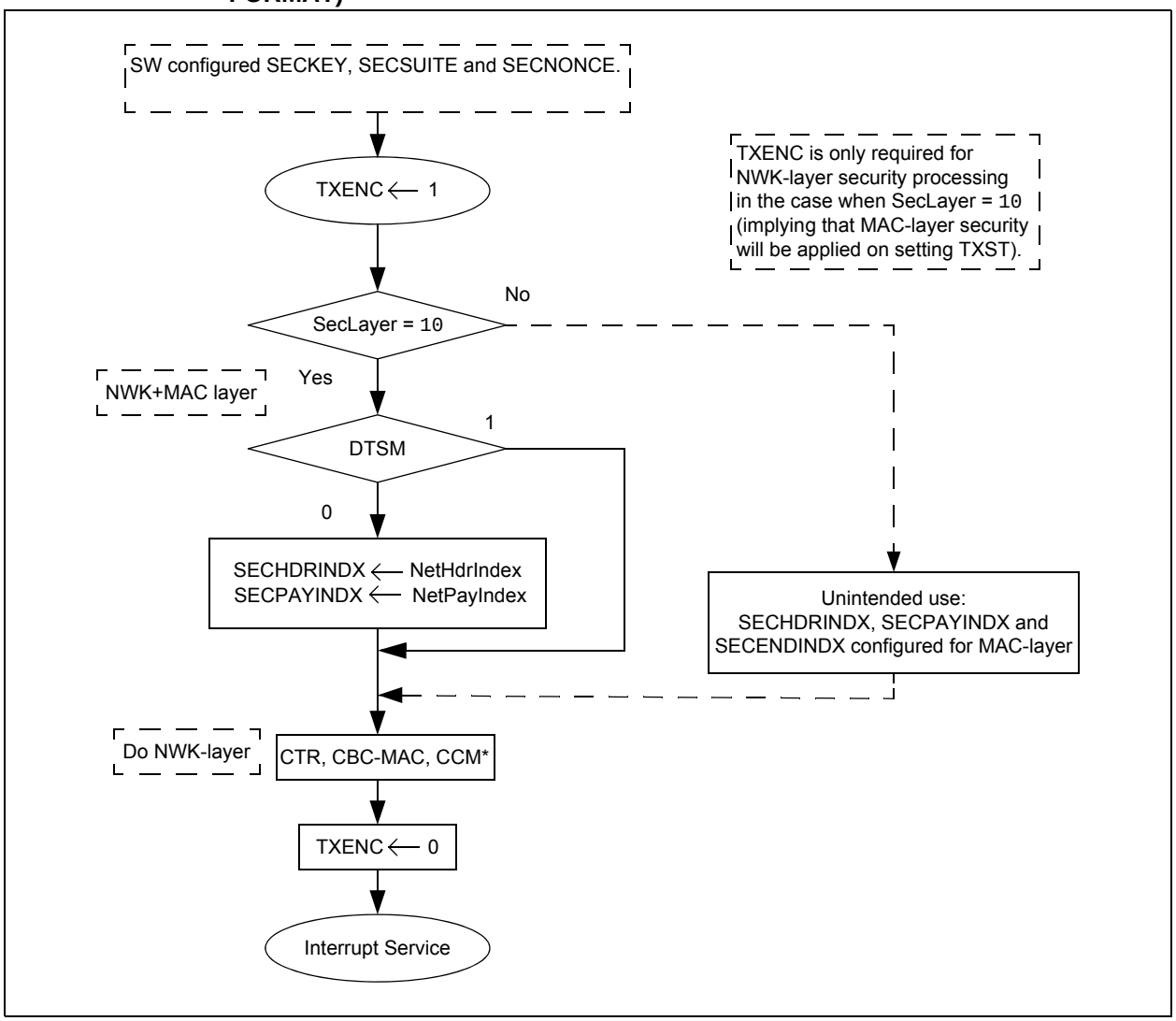


FIGURE 6-6: TRANSMITTER TXENC PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 1 (PROPRIETARY – FORMAT)

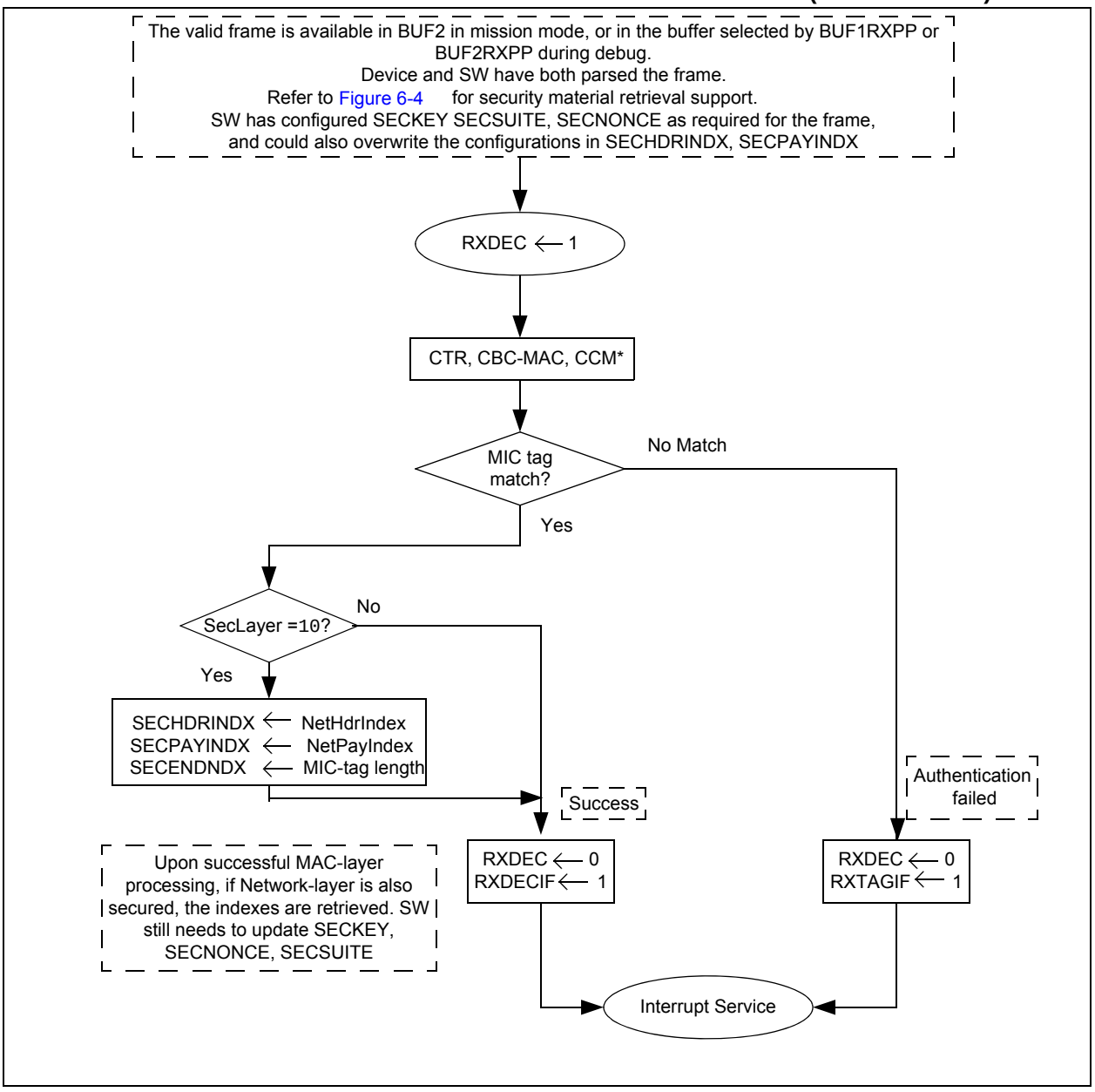


6.6 Security Processing of Received Proprietary Frames

Receive security is always performed by setting RXDEC and awaiting RXDECIF or RXTAGIF. It is never triggered automatically. When both MAC- and NWK-layer security are applied, then both shall be processed (in this order) by setting RXDEC a second time after the security material has been updated correctly.

The security functions triggered by RXDEC are shown in Figure 6-7. Observe the respective interrupts generated on completion and that RXDEC is cleared by the device automatically.

FIGURE 6-7: RECEIVER RXDEC PROCESSING WHEN FRMFMT = 1 (PROPRIETARY)



6.7 Security Procedure for Proprietary Frames

Provided that SecEn is set (1) in the MHR, three levels of security processing are possible, based on the SecLayer<1:0> bits carried in the AuxSecHdr<1:0> field of a given frame: 00-MAC only, 01-NWK only, 10-MAC and NWK.

TABLE 6-6: SECURED FRAME TRANSMISSION (PROPRIETARY MAC FORMAT)

#	Processing Step	Steps per each Security Case		
		MAC-only	**NWK-only**	**MAC+NWK layer**
1	Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1
2	For NWK-security processing, Host MCU configures:	No NWK-layer security	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE
3	Host MCU triggers security processing without sending		No TXENC.	Host: TXENC ← 1
4	Security processing is performed by the device for NWK layer if TXENC is set. SECPAYINDX, SECHDRINDX are filled in from NetHdrIndex, NetPayIndex, respectively. SECENDINDX initially points at the last payload byte. LENGTH and SECENDINDX are updated if MIC tag is appended. TXSZIF if size have run over 127 bytes.			NWK-layer Security SECPAYINDX SECHDRINDX LENGTH, SECENDINDX
5	Host MCU awaits TXENCIF interrupt, indicating completion. (TXENC cleared by the device.)			TXENCIF ←1 TXENC ← 0
6	For MAC-security processing, Host MCU configures:	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE	No MAC security.	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE
7	Host MCU triggers Security processing and Sending	Host: TXST ←1	Host: TXST ←1	Host: TXST ←1
8	If SecEn = 1 and DTSM = 0 then the device configures the SEC*INDX registers using MacPayIndex, MacHdrIndex and the LENGTH field.	SECHDRINDX SECPAYINDX SECENDINDX	—	SECHDRINDX SECPAYINDX SECENDINDX
9	Security processing is performed by the device for the indicated layer: LENGTH is adjusted if MAC or NWK-layer MIC tag is appended. TXSZIF if size run over 127 bytes.	MAC-layer Security LENGTH if MIC added	NWK-layer Security LENGTH if MIC added	MAC-layer Security LENGTH if MIC added
10	LENGTH is adjusted as CRC is appended (if CRCSZ = 1). TXSZIF if size run over 127 bytes.	LENGTH, CRC		
11	Frame is sent.	TXIF (if no TXSZIF or FRMIF) TXST ← 0		

TABLE 6-7: SECURED FRAME RECEPTION (PROPRIETARY MAC FORMAT)

#	Processing Step	Steps per each Security Case		
		MAC-only	NWK-only	MAC+NWK layer
-2	Device parses the SecEn bit in the FrameCtrl	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1	SecEn = 1
-1	For MAC-security processing, the device configures the SECHDRINDX, SECPAYINDX based on the Auxiliary Security Header, as well as the SECENDINDX based on the LENGTH field.	SEC*INDX from MacHdrIndex, MacPayIndex and the LENGTH	SEC*INDX from NetHdrIndex, NetPayIndex and the LENGTH	SEC*INDX from MacHdrIndex, MacPayIndex and the LENGTH
0	Valid frame received and accepted by RXFILTER	RXIF = 1, RXBUFFUL = 1, (RXSFDIF = 1)		
1	Host MCU reads the frame header to check SecEn, SecLayer, Source Address, and so on.	Read frame header from buffer.		
2	For MAC-security processing, the Host MCU must load the following:	SECKEY NONCE SECSUITE	No MAC-layer security	SECKEY NONCE SECSUITE
3	Host MCU starts MAC-security processing by setting RXDEC.	Host: RXDEC ←1		Host: RXDEC ←1
4	Device performs MAC-layer security.	MAC-layer security		MAC-layer security
5	If SecLayer = 10 then SEC*INDX are filled in preparation for network-layer security processing following in the sequel.	—		SEC*INDX from NetHdrIndex, NetPayIndex and the MAC-layer MIC-position (if present)
6	If Authentication fails then RXTAGIF is generated otherwise the security operation is successful and RXDECIF is generated. RXDEC is cleared by the device	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0		RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0
7	SW examines RXTAGIF. If set, SW aborts further processing and frees the buffer by clearing RXBUFFUL.	RXTAGIF ←1		RXTAGIF ←1
8	For NWK-security processing, the Host MCU must load the following:	No NWK-layer security	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE	SECKEY SECSUITE NONCE
9	Host MCU starts NWK-security processing by setting RXDEC		Host: RXDEC ←1	Host: RXDEC ←1
10	Device performs NWK layer security processing. (No figure)		NWK-layer security	NWK-layer security
11	If Authentication fails then RXTAGIF is generated otherwise the security operation is successful and RXDECIF is generated. RXDEC is cleared by the device		RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0	RXDECIF (or RXTAGIF) RXDEC ← 0
12	SW examines RXTAGIF. If set, SW aborts further processing and frees the buffer by clearing RXBUFFUL		RXTAGIF ←1	RXTAGIF ←1
13	SW reads the payload from the buffer.		—	—
14	SW clears the RXBUFFUL to free the buffer	RXBUFFUL ← 0		

6.8 Security Examples

This section provides examples for Proprietary mode framing.

6.8.1 MAC-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 1

- Network configuration: Address size is 8 bytes
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Payload: BA BA
- MAC security level: 0x04
- MAC security indices: Encode only from the second payload
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.1.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   15 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 54 || BA BA
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x04
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE to 0x08070605040302015555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
7. Host MCU sets the TXST register
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x15
   - SECENDINDX to 0x15
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* encryption, where BA BA is encrypted to BA F7
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x9D0A
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    17 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 54 || BA F7 || 0A 9D

6.8.1.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   17 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 54 || BA F7 || 0A 9D
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x15
   - SECENDINDX to 0x15
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x04
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE to 0x08070605040302015555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* decryption, where BA F7 is decrypted to BA BA
8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. —
11. —
12. —
13. —
14. —
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    17 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 54 || BA BA || 0A 9D || RSVs

6.8.2 MAC-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 2

- Network configuration: Address size is 8 bytes, Inferred destination addressing
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Payload: BA BA
- MAC security level: 0x07
- MAC security indices: Encode only from the second payload
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.2.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   15 || 09 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 34 || BA BA

   Always encode Security Indices with DA present in AUXSECHDR!
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
7. Host MCU issues TXST
8. MRF24XA configures
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x0D
   - SECENDINDX to 0x0D
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where BA BA is encrypted to BA F7, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   00 11 6C 8C 59 02 66 AC 5B DC 2D 30 21 1E D0 0C
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0xA2D2
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). Packet transmitted to the medium:

    17 || 09 55 || 34 || BA F7 || 00 11 6C 8C 59 02 66 AC 5B DC 2D 30 21 1E D0 0C || D2 A2

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    1F || 09 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 || 34 || BA F7 || 00 11 6C 8C 59 02 66 AC 5B DC 2D 30 21 1E D0 0C || D2 A2

6.8.2.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   17 || 09 55 || 34 || BA F7 || 00 11 6C 8C 59 02 66 AC 5B DC 2D 30 21 1E D0 0C || D2 A2
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x0D (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x15
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and BA F7 is decrypted to BA BA
8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. —
11. —
12. —
13. —
14. —
15. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    17 || 09 55 || 34 || BA BA || 00 11 6C 8C 59 02 66 AC 5B DC 2D 30 21 1E D0 0C || D2 A2 || RSVs

6.8.3 MAC-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 3

- Network configuration: Address size is 1 byte, Inferred destination addressing
- Source address: 0x01 (is at address 0x1F)
- Destination address: 0x91
- Payload: BA BA
- MAC security level: 0x07
- MAC security indices: Encode only from the second payload
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.3.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer: 06 || 09 55 91 || 18 || BA BA. Always encode security indices with DA present in AUXSECHDR!
2. —
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
7. Host MCU issues TXST
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x06
   - SECENDINDX to 0x06
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where BA BA is encrypted to BA F7, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   35 84 FC 4F 1B 92 36 D2 8F D5 D8 B6 68 79 6A 13
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x23A9
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). Packet transmitted to the medium:

    17 || 09 55 || 18 || BA F7 || 35 84 FC 4F 1B 92 36 D2 8F D5 D8 B6 68 79 6A 13 || A9 23

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    18 || 09 55 91 || 18 || BA F7 || 35 84 FC 4F 1B 92 36 D2 8F D5 D8 B6 68 79 6A 13 || A9 23

6.8.3.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   17 || 09 55 || 18 || BA F7 || 35 84 FC 4F 1B 92 36 D2 8F D5 D8 B6 68 79 6A 13 || A9 23
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x06 (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x15
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and BA F7 is decrypted to BA BA
8. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
9. —
10. —
11. —
12. —
13. —
14. —
15. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    17 || 09 55 || 18 || BA BA || 35 84 FC 4F 1B 92 36 D2 8F D5 D8 B6 68 79 6A 13 || A9 23 || RSVs

6.8.4 NWK-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 1

- Network configuration: Address size is 8 bytes
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Network header: BA BA
- Network payload: AB AB
- NET security level: 0x01
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.4.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   15 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA AB AB
2. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x01
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. Host MCU issues TXST
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x15
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17
   - SECENDINDX to 0x18
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication, where the following MIC tag is attached:

   FB 17 32 26
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0xAA70
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    1E || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA FB 17 32 26 || 70 AA

6.8.4.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   1E || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA FB 17 32 26 || 70 AA
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x15
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17
   - SECENDINDX to 0x18
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. —
8. —
9. —
10. —
11. Host MCU configures:
    - SECSUITE to 0x04
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
12. Host MCU issues RXDEC
13. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one
14. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    1E || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA FB 17 32 26 || 70 AA || RSVs

6.8.5 NWK-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 2

- Network configuration: Address size is 8 bytes, Inferred destination addressing
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201 where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Network header: BA BA
- Network payload: AB AB
- Security level: 0x07
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.5.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   15 || 89 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA AB AB
2. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. Host MCU issues TXST
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x15
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17
   - SECENDINDX to 0x18
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication and encryption, where BA BA AB AB is encrypted to BA BA E6 E5, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x55C1
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). Packet transmitted to the medium:

    22 || 89 55 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || C1 55

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    2A || 89 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || C1 55

6.8.5.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   22 || 89 55 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || C1 55
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x15 (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17 (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x20
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. —
8. —
9. —
10. —
11. Host MCU configures:
    - SECSUITE to 0x07
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
12. Host MCU issues RXDEC
13. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and BA BA E6 E5 is decrypted to BA BA AB AB
14. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    22 || 89 55 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 55 2E || BA BA AB AB 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || C1 55 || RSVs

6.8.6 NWK-LAYER EXAMPLE 3

- Network configuration: Address size is 1 byte, Inferred destination addressing
- Source address: 0x01 (is at address 0x1F)
- Destination address: 0x91
- Network header: BA BA
- Network payload: AB AB
- Security level: 0x07
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.6.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer: 0A || 89 55 91 01 || 1D 12 || BA BA AB AB
2. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
3. —
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. Host MCU issues TXST
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x07
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x09
   - SECENDINDX to 0x0A
9. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication and encryption, where BA BA AB AB is encrypted to BA BA E6 E5, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8
10. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0xCD05
11. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). Packet transmitted to the medium:

    1B || 89 55 01 || 1D 12 || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || 05 CD

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    1C || 89 55 91 01 || 1D 12 || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || 05 CD

6.8.6.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   1B || 89 55 01 || 1D 12 || BA BA E6 E5 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || 05 CD
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x07 (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x09 (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x19
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. —
6. —
7. —
8. —
9. —
10. —
11. Host MCU configures:
    - SECSUITE to 0x07
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
12. Host MCU issues RXDEC
13. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and BA BA E6 E5 is decrypted to BA BA AB AB
14. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from the RX Buffer (0x300):

    1B || 89 55 01 || 1D 12 || BA BA BA BA 77 FE 46 E2 D4 0E 1D C6 34 D9 34 36 4F 28 2F D8 || 05 CD || RSVs

6.8.7 MAC AND NWK-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 1

- Network configuration: Address size is 8 bytes
- Source address: 0x0807060504030201, where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x9897969594939291
- Payload: BA BA
- Network header: AB
- Network payload: AB
- Network security level: 0x07
- MAC security level: 0x03
- MAC security indices: Encode only from the second payload
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.7.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   19 || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 5E 18 19 || BA BA AB AB
2. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x08070605040302015555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
3. Host MCU issues TXENC
4. MRF24XA configures
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x18
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x19
   - SECENDINDX to 0x19
5. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where AB AB is encrypted to AB E6, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D
6. MRF24XA asserts TXENCIF (and IDLEIF)
7. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x03
   - SECKEY to 0xFFFEFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1F0, where LSB (0xF0) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0xF8F7F6F5F4F3F2F15555555506, where (0xF8) is at address 0x5c
8. Host MCU issues TXST
9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17
   - SECENDINDX to 0x29
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication, where the following MIC tag is attached:

    05 15 AB 5F 6C 7D 5C 70 6C 96 91 C0 34 E5 18 0D
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0x717B
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA).

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    3B || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 5E 18 19 || BA BA AB E6 AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D 05 15 AB 5F 6C 7D 5C 70 6C 96 91 C0 34 E5 18 0D || 7B 71

6.8.7.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   3B || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 5E 18 19 || BA BA AB E6 AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D 05 15 AB 5F 6C 7D 5C 70 6C 96 91 C0 34 E5 18 0D || 7B 71
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x17
   - SECENDINDX to 0x39
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures
   - SECSUITE to 0x03
   - SECKEY to 0xFFFEFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1F0, where LSB (0xF0) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0xF8F7F6F5F4F3F2F15555555506, where MSB (0xF8) is at address 0x5c
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x18
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x19
   - SECENDINDX to 0x29
9. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
10. —

11. Host MCU configures:
    - SECSUITE to 0x07
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECNONCE to 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
12. Host MCU issues RXDEC
13. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and AB E6 is decrypted to AB AB
14. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from the RX Buffer (0x300):

    3B || C9 55 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 || 5E 18 19 || BA BA AB AB AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D 05 15 AB 5F 6C 7D 5C 70 6C 96 91 C0 34 E5 18 0D || 7B 71 || RSVs

6.8.8 MAC AND NWK-LAYER SECURITY EXAMPLE 2

- Network configuration: Address size is 4 bytes, Inferred destination addressing
- Source address: 0x04030201 where LSB (0x01) is at address 0x1F
- Destination address: 0x94939291
- Payload: BA BA
- Network header: AB
- Network payload: AB
- Network security level: 0x07
- MAC security level: 0x07
- MAC security indices: Encode only from the second payload
- Packet: Data packet

6.8.8.1 Transmission

1. Host MCU constructs the frame and loads the buffer:

   11 || 89 55 91 92 93 94 01 02 03 04 || 3E 10 11 || BA BA AB AB
2. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A09080706050403020100, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0x0807060504030201555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
3. Host MCU issues TXENC
4. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x10
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x11
   - SECENDINDX to 0x11
5. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where AB AB is encrypted to AB E6, and the following MIC tag is attached:

   AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D
6. MRF24XA asserts TXENCIF (and IDLEIF)
7. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x03
   - SECKEY to 0xFFFEFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1F0, where LSB (0xF0) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0xF8F7F6F5F4F3F2F15555555506, where (0xF8) is at address 0x5c
8. Host MCU issues TXST

9. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x0F
   - SECENDINDX to 0x21
10. MRF24XA performs CCM* authentication with encryption, where BA BA AB E6 AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D is encrypted to BA A2 6D 3C 78 90 8F 99 BB E6 6B 29 CC AF A1 6F 14 9B 0D 7A, and the following MIC tag is attached:

    23 EB C5 73 E8 44 DA 0E 8D D7 9C E7 06 E1 BD C2
11. MRF24XA appends CRC: 0xF9B3
12. MRF24XA transmits the packet to the medium. Different IF can be received based on the register settings (for example, TX with CSMA). Packet transmitted to the medium:

    2F || 89 55 01 02 03 04 || 3E 10 11 || BA A2 6D 3C 78 90 8F 99 BB E6 6B 29 CC AF A1 6F 14 9B 0D 7A 23 EB C5 73 E8 44 DA 0E 8D D7 9C E7 06 E1 BD C2 || B3 F9

    TX Buffer (0x200) content:

    33 || 89 55 91 92 93 94 01 02 03 04 || 3E 10 11 || BA A2 6D 3C 78 90 8F 99 BB E6 6B 29 CC AF A1 6F 14 9B 0D 7A 23 EB C5 73 E8 44 DA 0E 8D D7 9C E7 06 E1 BD C2 || B3 F9

6.8.8.2 Reception

1. MRF24XA receives the following packet through the antenna:

   2F || 89 55 01 02 03 04 || 3E 10 11 || BA A2 6D 3C 78 90 8F 99 BB E6 6B 29 CC AF A1 6F 14 9B 0D 7A 23 EB C5 73 E8 44 DA 0E 8D D7 9C E7 06 E1 BD C2 || B3 F9
2. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x01
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x0F (inferred DA is considered)
   - SECENDINDX to 0x2D
3. MRF24XA asserts RXIF (RXSFDIF): Packet accepted by RX filter
4. —
5. Host MCU configures:
   - SECSUITE to 0x07
   - SECKEY to 0xFFFEFDFCFBFAF9F8F7F6F5F4F3F2F1F0, where LSB (0xF0) is at address 0x40
   - SECNONCE 0xF8F7F6F5F4F3F2F15555555506, where (0xF8) is at address 0x5c
6. Host MCU issues RXDEC
7. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and

   BA A2 6D 3C 78 90 8F 99 BB E6 6B 29 CC AF A1 6F 14 9B 0D 7A is decrypted to BA BA AB E6 AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D
8. MRF24XA configures:
   - SECHDRINDX to 0x10
   - SECPAYINDX to 0x11
   - SECENDINDX to 0x1D
9. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
10. —
11. Host MCU configures:
    - SECSUITE to 0x07
    - SECKEY to 0x0F0E0D0C0B0A0908070605040302010, where LSB (0x00) is at address 0x40
    - SECNONCE to 0x08070605040302015555555506, where MSB (0x08) is at address 0x5c
12. Host MCU issues RXDEC
13. MRF24XA performs CCM* de-authentication and decryption, where the MIC tag is compared against the received one, and AB E6 is decrypted to AB AB
14. MRF24XA asserts RXDECIF (and IDLEIF)
15. —
16. SW read the entire frame from RX Buffer (0x300):

    2F || 89 55 01 02 03 04 || 3E 10 11 || BA BA AB AB AB 4B 03 7B B7 30 98 B1 E5 93 CA D7 86 81 8A 2D 23 EB C5 73 E8 44 DA 0E 8D D7 9C E7 06 E1 BD C2 || B3 F9 || RSVs

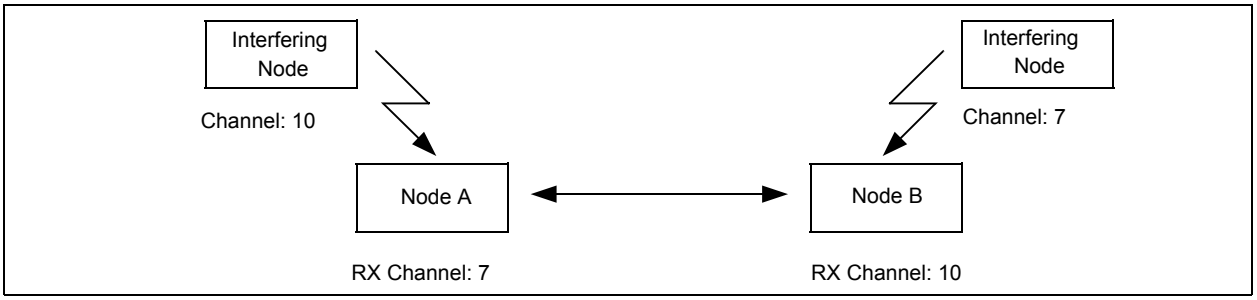
7.0 ADVANCED LINK BEHAVIOR IN PROPRIETARY PACKET MODE

7.1 Channel Agility

In some communication environments, where several nodes use the same medium, it might be necessary to choose different channels for the communicating nodes. It introduces difficulties in ACK receiving. Figure 7-1 illustrates the example of channel agility. To prevent higher MCU load on channel changing, MRF24XA handles the channel change for ACK sending automatically. This feature is enabled by ADPTCHEN bit, that must be enabled for all the nodes within the same network.Figure 4-12 describes the ACK sending mechanism.

Note, that in case of Inferred DA, the ACKINFO field is mandatory when AckReq=1. Otherwise the ACKINFO field is mandatory if and only if ADPTDREN = 1 or ADPTCHEN = 1.

FIGURE 7-1: CHANNEL AGILITY EXAMPLE



EXAMPLE 7-1: AUTO ACK EXAMPLE WITH CHANNEL AGILITY

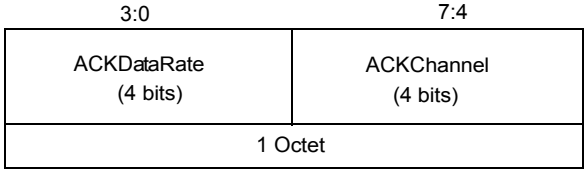
A → B:		B:	CHANNEL = 10(2)
A:	CHANNEL = 10(1)		RXIF
	TXST		CHANNEL = 7
	CHANNEL = 7		Sending ACK back to A
			CHANNEL = 10

Note 1: Node A knows the frequency channel, that Node B uses for receiving.

2: However, Node B might know the RX channel of Node A, as AUTOACK = 1 the ACK must immediately sent back, there is no time for MCU interactions.

Channel Agility is based on AckInfo field of the Proprietary MAC Header. Proprietary MAC Header is described by Figure 6-1.

FIGURE 7-2: PROPRIETARY MAC ACKINFO<7:0> OCTET (ONLY PRESENT WHEN ACKREQ = 1)



AckDataRate: When ADPTDREN = 1 and AckReq = 1, this field determines the TX Data Rate for the ACK packet, regardless of the setting of the DR<3:0> register field.

AckChannel: When ADPTCHEN = 1 and AckReq = 1, this field determines the TX Channel for the ACK packet, regardless of the setting of the CH<3:0> register field.

REGISTER 7-1: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set	C = Clearable bit	

bit 7-2 Out of scope

bit 1 **ADPTCHEN:** Adaptive Channel Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC to set the transmitting channel for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the CH<3:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Channel feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Channel feature is disabled

bit 0 Out of scope

Note 1: ADPTCHEN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

7.2 Data Rate Agility

Similar to Channel Agility, described in Figure 7.1, ACK can be sent at different data rates within different nodes. It might provide more robust ACK sending mechanism in busier networking environments. Data Rate Agility is enabled by the ADPTDREN bit, and that must be set for all the nodes within the same network. Data Rate Agility is based on AckInfo field of the Proprietary MAC Header. Proprietary MAC Header is described in Figure 6-1. AckInfo field is described in Figure 7-1. Figure 4-12 describes the ACK sending mechanism.

REGISTER 7-2: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set	C = Clearable bit	

bit 7-1 Out of scope

bit 0 **ADPTDREN:** Adaptive Data Rate Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC to set the transmission data rate for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the DR<2:0> register bits.

1 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is disabled

Note 1: ADPTDREN field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

7.3 Auto-Repeater

The Auto-Repeat feature allows to automatically (without Host Controller intervention) repeat any packets that request it (FrameCtrl[Repeat] = 1). Auto-Repeat is not available in RX- or TX- Streaming modes, as these modes are designed to provide maximum throughput, rather than reliable transport. Only Data and Command frames are repeated with Auto-Repeat.

When MRF24XA receives a Data or Command frame with its FrameCtrl[Repeat] bit set, that frame may be repeated without MCU intervention by setting the AUTORPTEN register bit. If the packet is a Unicast packet, and its Destination Address (explicit or inferred) matches the ADDR<63:0> register, then the packet will not be repeated, but will instead be received as a normal packet. If the packet is a Broadcast packet, or is a Unicast packet with a non-matching address, the packet will be received into the buffer, and then retransmitted (repeated) without modification (no CRC generation or encryption steps are performed).

It is recommended to use this function together with the CSMA/CA algorithm, to avoid the collision and with the IDENTREJ = 1 function. Therefore, packet received more than twice will not be repeated.

7.4 Streaming

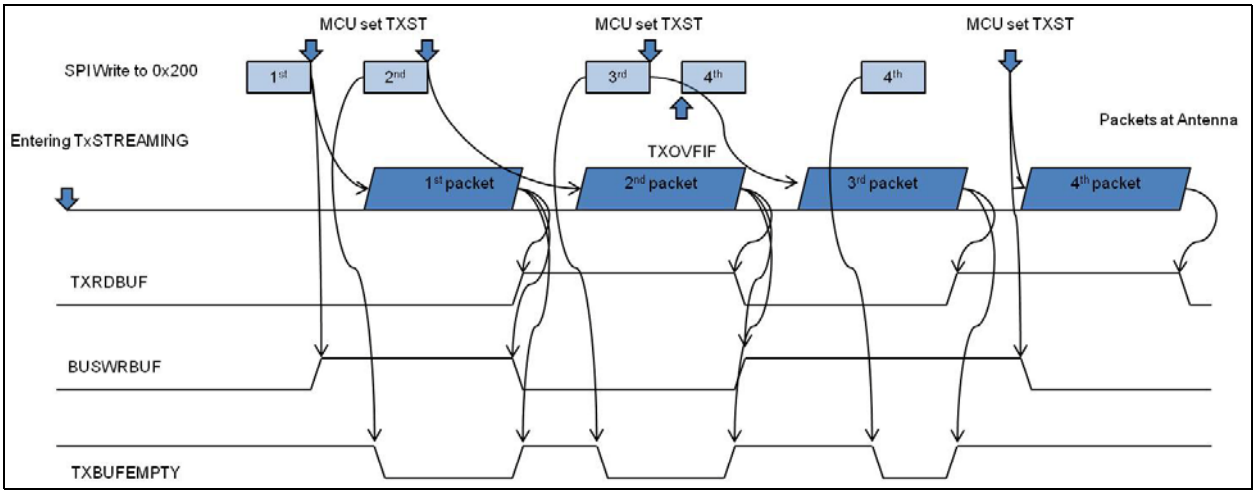
The Streaming feature provides the maximum throughput between two nodes. In this mode, the two packet buffers are used to transmit/receive packets in ping-pong fashion. Auto-ACK and Auto-Retransmission are not available in this mode. In addition, CSMA-CA operation is skipped in order to provide the maximum throughput.

7.4.1 TX

After the initial negotiation (channel, power, security key, and so on), the TX node sets the TRXMODE<1:0> register to 2'b10. The MCU shall write the packets to address 0x200. The switching is handled internally. Note that MCU shall write MRF24XA if and only if the TXBUFFEMPTY flag is set. To maximize throughput, "WRITE and set TXST" SPI framing format is recommended.

Note that for debugging purpose, the TXRDBUF, BUSWRBUF and TXBUFEMPTY signals can be output on the GPIO pins with GPIOMODE = 1010 settings.

FIGURE 7-3: STREAMING MODE TX TIMELINE

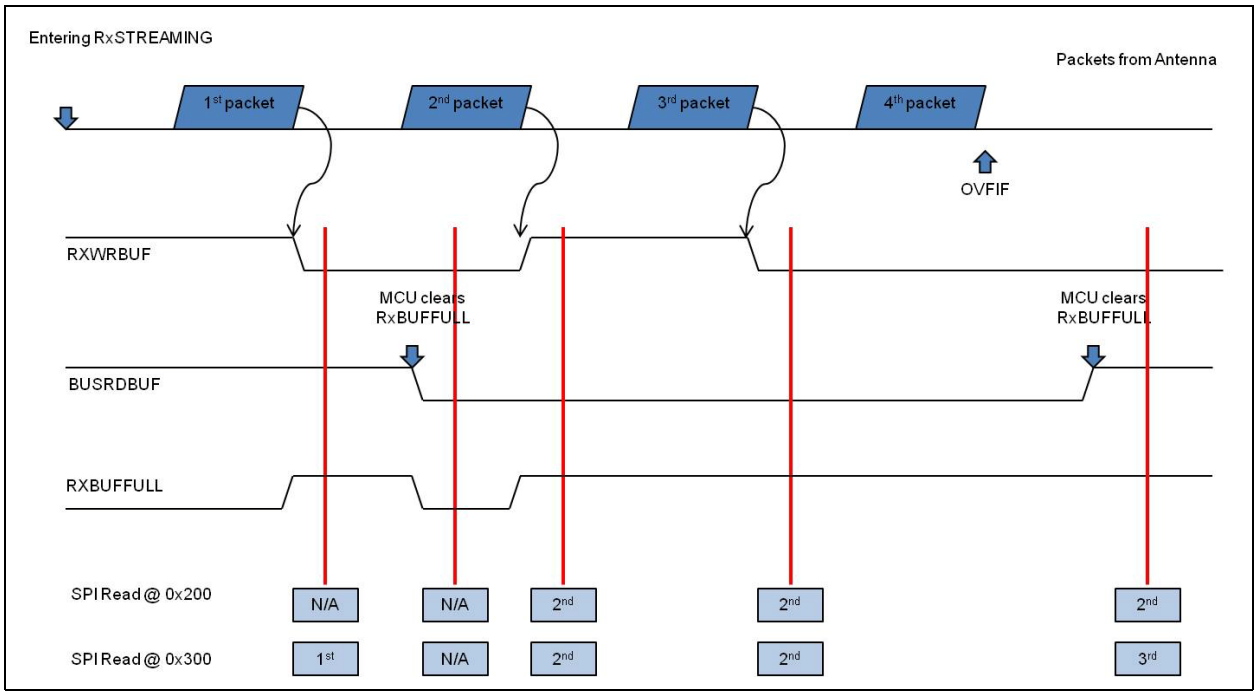


7.4.2 RX

After the initial negotiation (channel, power, security key, and so on), the RX node sets the TRXMODE<1:0> register to 2'b01. The MCU shall read the packets from address 0x300. The switching is handled internally. Note that MCU shall read MRF24XA when the RXBUFFULL flag is set. To maximize throughput, "READ and clear RXBUFFULL" SPI framing format is recommended.

Note that for debugging purpose, the RXWRBUF, BUSRDBUF and RXBUFFUL signals can be output on the GPIO pins with GPIOMODE = 1011 settings.

FIGURE 7-4: STREAMING RX TIMELINE



8.0 BRIDGING

Any member of a proprietary node may run two stacks and be part of a 15.4 network. This allows the node to act as a gateway between the two networks. By default it is configured to be NWFRMFMT = 1. When it receives a 15.4 frame, this setting is overridden. When it needs to send it switches back temporarily.

The network can be configured to use proprietary or standard (IEEE 802.15.4) MAC. However, a proprietary network should also be able to send and receive frames to/from standard-compliant networks. This capability is referred to as bridging.

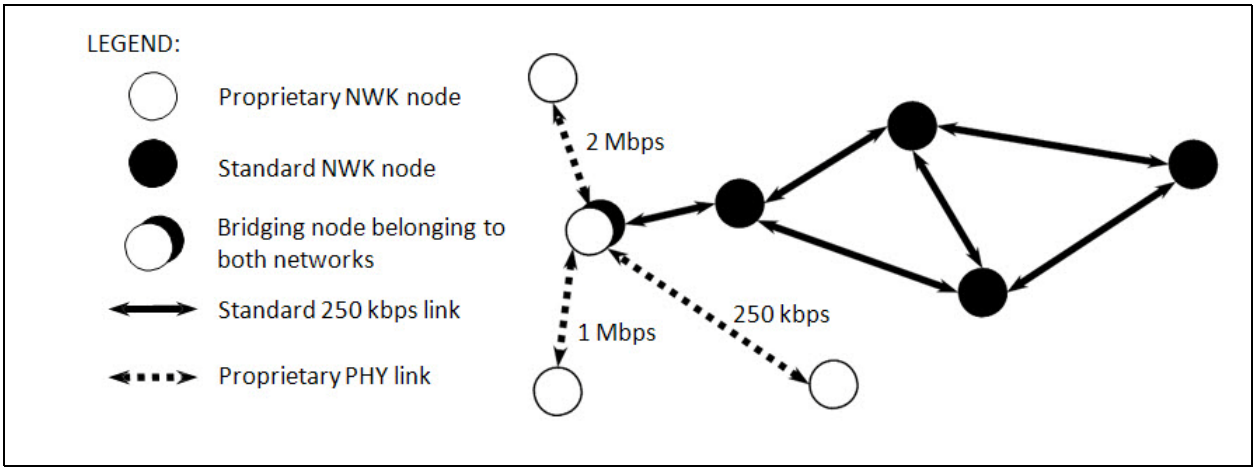
The bridging node must implement both the proprietary and the standard compliant MAC framing protocols. Each time a 250 kbps frame is received by the bridging node, it needs to decide which MAC protocol to use for parsing the incoming frame.

The problem of bridging is that the 802.15.4 MAC Frame Control field will not allow for distinction in the case of 250 kbps frames. Therefore, the selected SFD is used for distinction. Standard compliant SFD pattern is selected when Standard MAC is used with 250 kbps frame, or else different SFD value is used.

When the Host MCU (or MAC) selects the 250 kbps air data rate for transmission, it also indicates which MAC is used by a sideband signal. The transmitter baseband will select the SFD accordingly. If proprietary MAC is selected, the SFD is read from a host configurable register, otherwise the standard defined pattern is used (0xA7). As an additional difference, the length and payload fields are scrambled if proprietary is used, otherwise they are not.

On the receiver side, the 250 kbps preamble and the SFD are detected first. This will determine which MAC protocol is used to parse the PHY payload.

FIGURE 8-1: BRIDGING



NOTES:

9.0 PHYSICAL LAYER FUNCTIONS

9.1 Synthesizer Power-Up, Power-Off

Table 2-1 illustrates MRF24XA power modes, while Figure 4-2 illustrates the operation states.

RFOFF state is the state when most of the RF circuits are powered off. As Table 2-1 illustrates, RFOFF state can be divided into two sub-states. In Crystal ON state, only 16 MHz on-chip crystal oscillator is powered on and the synthesizer is switched off. In Synthesizer ON state, both the on-chip crystal oscillator and the synthesizer are powered on.

MRF24XA provides an OFF-Timer to optimize the power consumption by managing the ON-time of the on-chip synthesizer. Before the synthesizer is switched off, RXEN or TXST goes to '0' from '1', the user must set OFFTM<7:0>. The value of the register is interpreted as an OFF time counter. As the counter runs out, synthesizer is started regardless of the state of RXEN and TXST bits.

REGISTER 9-1: OFFTM (OFF-TIMER REGISTER)

R/W-00000000	
OFFTM<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-0 **OFFTM<7:0>:** OFF-Timer Field bits

This value sets the minimum PLL OFF time.

Minimum OFF Time = OFFTM<7:0> * 32 μs

If this register is set to 0xFF, PLL will remain off.

REGISTER 9-2: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable Field bit

This bit enables/disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled
0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode

The most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

The clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when required, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

bit 6 **NOPA:** No Parsing bit

This bit will disable packet parsing. Only CRC will be checked, if it is enabled. This feature is useful in Sniffer mode.

1 = Disable packet parsing
0 = Enable packet parsing

bit 5 **RXDEC:** RX Decryption bit

Setting this bit will start RX security processing (authentication and/or decryption) on the last received packet.

1 = RX security processing started/in process. RXDECIF or RXTAGIF is set.
0 = RX security processing inactive or complete

This bit will clear itself after RX decryption has completed.

bit 4 **RSVLQIEN:** Receive Status Vector LQI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured Link Quality is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append LQI field
0 = Do not append LQI field

bit 3 **RSVRSSIEN:** Receive Status Vector RSSI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured RSSI is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append RSSI field
0 = Do not append RSSI field

bit 2 **RSVCHDREN:** Receive Status Vector Channel/MAC Type/Data Rate Enable bit

If this bit is set, Channel, MAC type and Data Rate configurations used with the received frame are appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the encoding specified for CH<3:0>, FRMFMT and DR<2:0> (concatenated in this order when most significant bit (MSb) is first).

1 = Append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields
0 = Do not append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

REGISTER 9-2: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 1 **RSVCFOEN:** Receive Status Vector CFO Enable bit

If bit is set, the estimated Carrier Frequency Offset of the received frame is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the same encoding as CFOMEAS register.

1 = Append CFO estimation
0 = Do not append estimated CFO

bit 0 Reserved: Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 9-3: TXCON (TRANSMIT CONTROL REGISTER)

R/W/HC -0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/HS/HC-1	R/W-1	R/W-011
TXST	DTSM	TXENC	TXBUFEMPTY	CSMAEN	DR<2:0>
bit 7					bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **TXST:** Transmit Start bit. When set or cleared by the host MCU bit(1, 2)

1 = Starts the transmission of the next TX packet
0 = Termination of current TX operation, which may result in the transmission of an incomplete packet.

Hardware Clear:

- After the packet has been successfully transmitted (including all attempted re-transmissions, if any) this bit will be cleared by hardware and **TXIF** and **IDLEIF** are set.
- If the packet transmission fails due to a CSMA failure, then this bit will be cleared, and TXCSMAIF is set.
- If Acknowledge was requested (AckReq bit field in the transmitted frame and **AUTOACKEN** register bit are both set) and not received after the configured number of re-transmissions (**TXRETMCNT**), then TXST bit will be cleared, and a **TXACKIF** is set.
- In TX-Streaming mode (TRXMODE), TXST can be set even when it is already set, resulting in a "posted start". When the current TX operation completes, the "posted start "will start immediately afterwards. Clearing of the TXST bit clears both the current and the posted (pending) TX starts. **TXOVFIF** is not changed when TXST = 1, a posted start is present and a Host Controller write to the packet buffer occurs. Outside of TX-Streaming mode, writes to TXST when TXST is already set will be ignored.

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- When transmitting a packet in Packet mode or in TX-Streaming mode
- When waiting for an ACK packet after a transmission
- During the CSMA CA algorithm
- When transmitting a repeated frame

This field can be read at any time to determine if the TX operation is in progress.

bit 6-0 Out of scope

Note 1: Transmission may include automatic security processing, CRC appending, CSMA-CA channel access, Acknowledge reception and re-transmissions depending on the register configuration and the frame control field of the frame to be transmitted.

2: By setting the TXST bit in either Sleep/RFOFF state, the device will transit to TX state for packet transmission.

TABLE 9-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH OFF PLL POWER-UP, POWER-OFF

Names	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
OFFTM	OFFTM<7:0>							
RXCON1	RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
TXCON	TXST	DTSM	TXENC	TXBUFEMPTY	CSMAEN	DR<2:0>		

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

9.2 Operating Channel

MRF24XA is capable of selecting one of sixteen channel frequencies in the 2.4 GHz band.

The desired channel is selected by configuring the CHANNEL<3:0> bits in the MACCON2 register. Refer to Table 9-2 for the MACCON2 register setting for channel number and frequency.

If Channel Agility is not used, all nodes share the same channel both in RX and TX modes. The channel is defined by CHANNEL<3:0> as it is indicated below.

Refer to **Section 7.1 "Channel Agility"** for more information on channel agility.

REGISTER 9-4: MACCON2 (MAC CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/W-0000	R/W/HS-0000
CHANNEL<3:0>	SECSUITE<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **CHANNEL<3:0>:** TX/RX operating channel Fields bits(1)

These register bits are used as the current operating channel for TX/RX operation.

0x0 = Channel 11
0x1 = Channel 12
•
•
•
0xF = Channel 26

bit 3-0 Out of scope

Note 1: This field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while RXEN or TXST is set.

TABLE 9-2: CHANNEL SELECTION MACCON2 (0x11) REGISTER SETTING

CHANNEL<3:0> Bits in MACCON2	Channel Number	Channel Frequency
0x0	11	2.405 GHz
0x1	12	2.410 GHz
0x2	13	2.415 GHz
0x3	14	2.420 GHz
0x4	15	2.425 GHz
0x5	16	2.430 GHz
0x6	17	2.435 GHz
0x7	18	2.440 GHz
0x8	19	2.445 GHz
0x9	20	2.450 GHz
0xA	21	2.455 GHz
0xB	22	2.460 GHz
0xC	23	2.465 GHz
0xD	24	2.470 GHz
0xE	25	2.475 GHz
0xF	26	2.480 GHz

REGISTER 9-5: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable bit(1, 2)

This bit Enables/Disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled
0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode
- Transmitting an ACK packet for a received frame during an Auto-Acknowledge operation

bit 6-0 Out of scope

Note 1: Most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

2: Clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when needed, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

REGISTER 9-6: RXCON2 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R/C/HS-0	R/W-0	R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0
RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HS = Hardware Set	C = Clearable bit	

bit 7-2 Out of scope

bit 1 **ADPTCHEN:** Adaptive Channel Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC to set the transmitting channel for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the **CH<3:0>** register bits.

1 = Adaptive Channel feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Channel feature is disabled

bit 0 **ADPTDREN:** Adaptive Data Rate Enable bit(1)

Setting this bit will enable the MAC to set the transmission data rate for the ACK packet based on the AckInfo field (proprietary packet) of the received packet, rather than the **DR<2:0>** register bits.

1 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is enabled
0 = Adaptive Data Rate feature is disabled

Note 1: This field is used while receiving and transmitting, and should not be modified while **RXEN** or **TXST** is set.

TABLE 9-3: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CHANNEL SELECTION

Names	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
MACCON2	CHANNEL<3:0>				SECSUITE<3:0>			
RXCON1	RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
RXCON2	RXBUFFUL	IDENTREJ	ACKRXFP	ACKTXFP	AUTORPTEN	AUTOACKEN	ADPTCHEN	ADPTDREN

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

SECSUITE<3:0>

9.3 RXLISTEN Operations

The air data rate can be detected in two stages:

1. By simultaneously monitoring the presence of 2 Mbps, 500 kbps, 250 kbps modulated preambles until one of them can be detected with sufficient reliability.
2. By searching for a Start Frame Delimiter that may further distinguish between air data rates.

The order of processing steps and decisions is shown in Figure 9-1 and Figure 9-2 for the Optimal and Legacy frame formats.

FIGURE 9-1: DATA RATE SELECTION IN THE RECEIVER WHEN OPTIMAL FRAMING MODE IS CONFIGURED

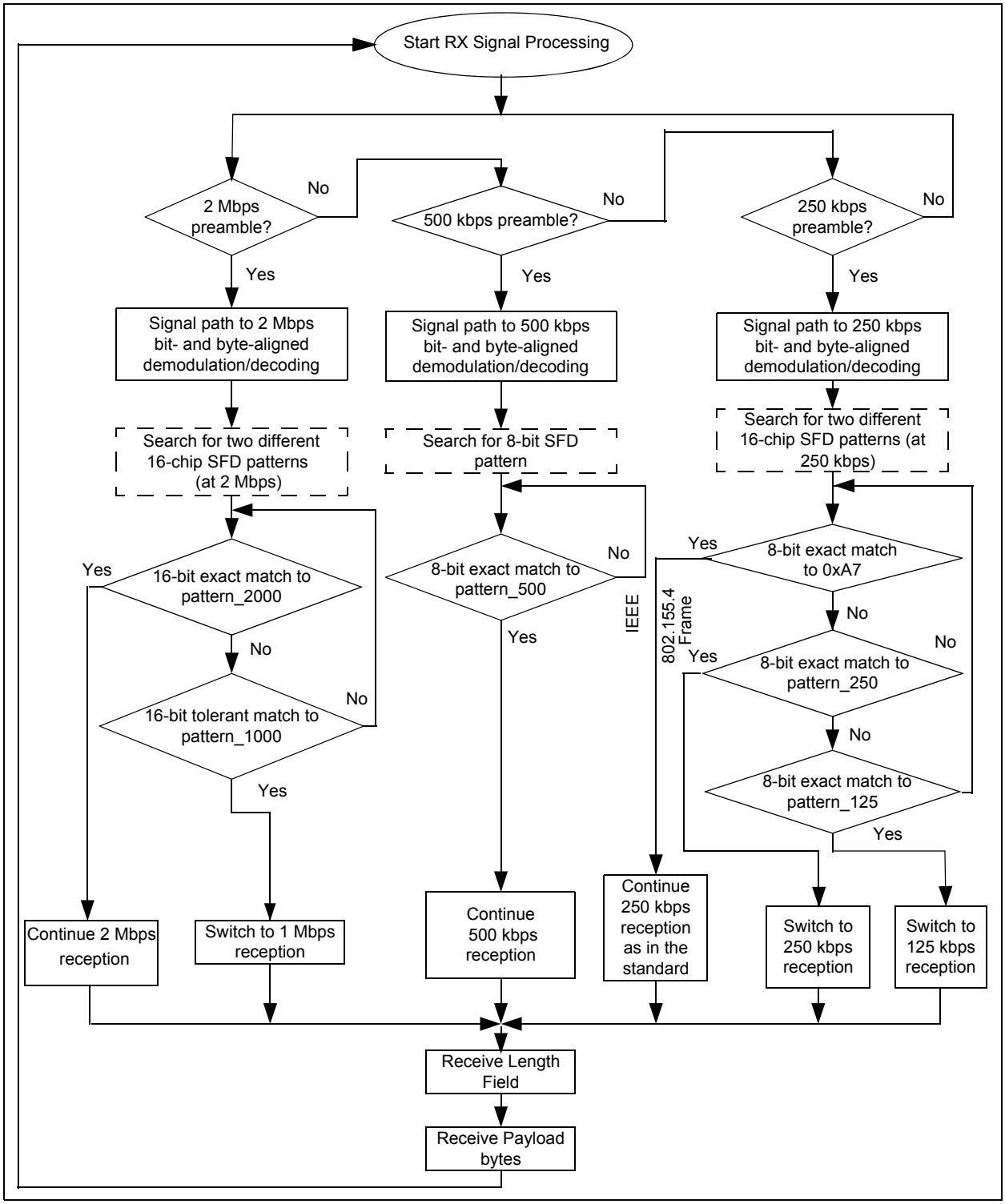


FIGURE 9-2: DATA RATE SELECTION IN THE RECEIVER WHEN LEGACY FRAMING MODE IS CONFIGURED

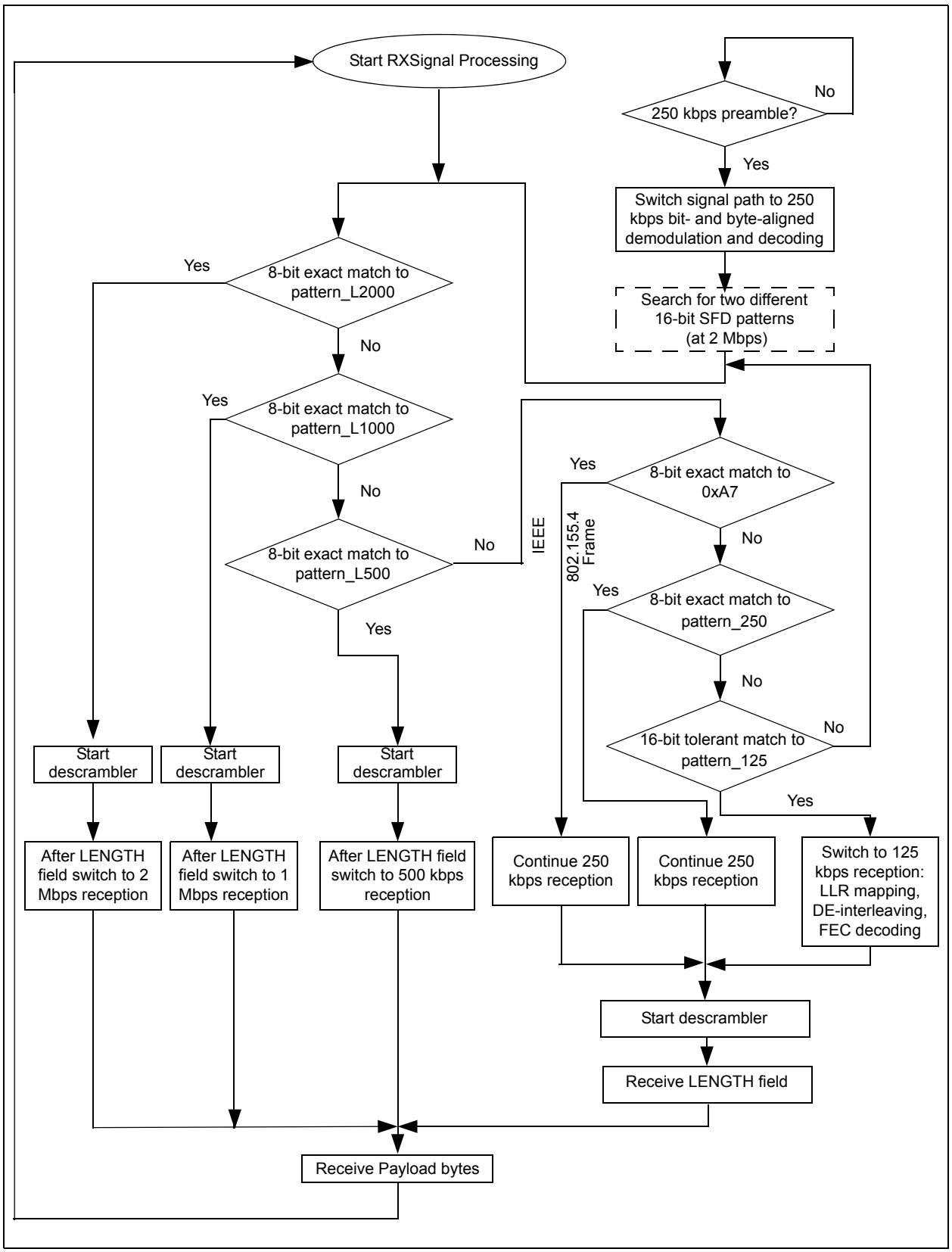
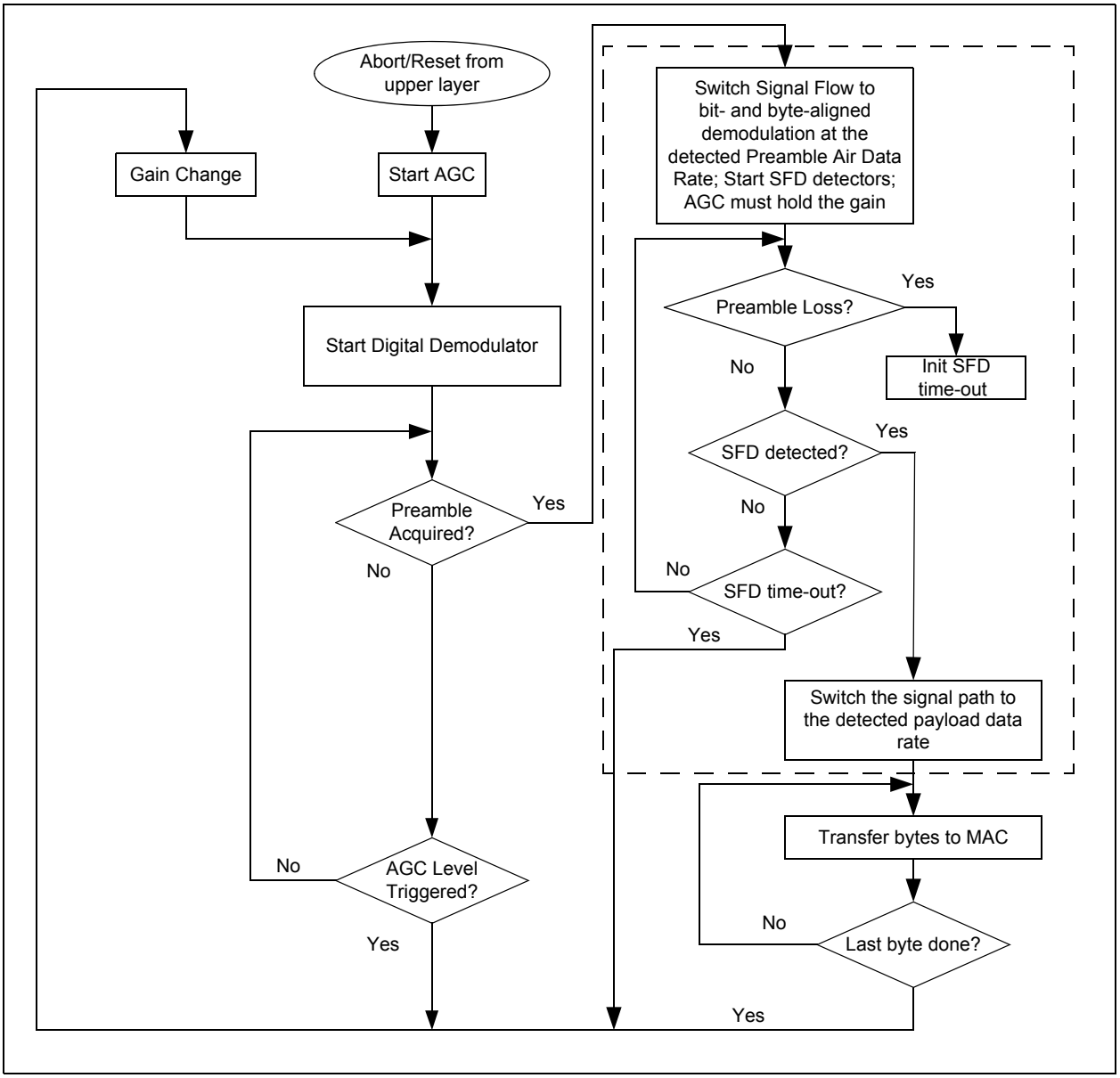


FIGURE 9-3: PHYSICAL RECEIVER OPERATION: OVERVIEW



9.4 Automatic Gain Control (AGC)

AGC circuit can provide automatic gain adjustment according to the received field strength. AGC gain can be set in four steps.

REGISTER 9-7: BBCON (BASEBAND CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-11	R/W-0	R/W-001
RNDMOD	AFCOVR	RXGAIN<1:0>	PRMBHOLD	PRMBSZ<2:0>
bit 7				bit 0

Legend:	W = Writable bit	R = Readable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown	
r = Reserved				

bit 7 Out of scope

bit 6 Out of scope

bit 5-4 **RXGAIN<1:0>:** Receiver Gain Register Field bits

By setting this bit, the AGC operation can be inhibited in the receiver and the receiver radio gain configuration can be selected between three different gain levels. Encoding:

11 = AGC operation is enabled (default value)
10 = High gain
01 = Middle gain
00 = Low gain

This feature can be used for test and streaming purposes. To reduce the required interframe-gap, the RXGAIN should be set to one of the fixed gain options when the MAC is in Streaming mode.

bit 3-0 Out of scope

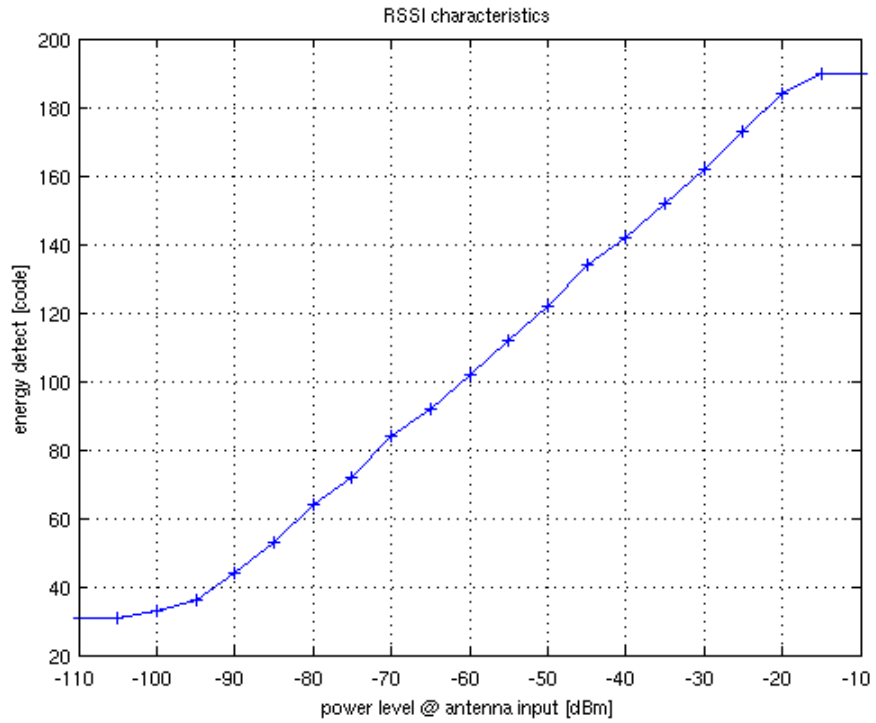
9.5 Energy Detection

The Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI) is an estimate of the received signal power within the bandwidth of a particular channel, and can be obtained by the user using Energy Detection (ED). MRF24XA has the capability to measure the received signal power for a user-defined number of symbols, and to report back the measured RSSI value.

The mapping between the RSSI value returned and the input power level is shown in Figure 9-4. This aggregates all the AGC curves, hence user does not require to calculate with any other settings. The curve can be directly used.

The RSSI value associated with a received packet may also be stored automatically as part of the packet's Receive Status Vector (RSV).

FIGURE 9-4: RSSI VALUE VS. RECEIVED POWER



EQUATION 9-1: RSSI VALUE VS. RECEIVED POWER EQUATION

$$Pin = 0.5 * Energy\ Detect\ Code^{(1)} - 112\ <dBm>^{(2)}$$

Note 1: Energy Detect Code can be read from EDMEAN<7:0> field.

2: Equation 9-1 is valid for EDMEAN<7:0> from 40 to 184 decimal values.

REGISTER 9-8: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable Field bit

This bit Enables/Disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is currently being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled
0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode

The most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

The clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when needed, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

bit 6 **NOPA:** No Parsing bit

This bit will disable packet parsing. Only CRC will be checked, if it is enabled. This feature is useful in sniffer mode.

1 = Disable packet parsing
0 = Enable packet parsing

bit 5 **RXDEC:** RX Decryption bit

Setting this bit will start RX security processing (authentication and/or decryption) on the last received packet.

1 = RX security processing started/in process. RXDECIF or RXTAGIF is set.
0 = RX security processing inactive or complete

This bit will clear itself after RX decryption has completed.

bit 4 **RSVLQIEN:** Receive Status Vector LQI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured Link Quality is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append LQI field
0 = Do not append LQI field

bit 3 **RSVRSSIEN:** Receive Status Vector RSSI Enable bit

If this bit is set, the measured RSSI is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append RSSI field
0 = Do not append RSSI field

bit 2 **RSVCHDREN:** Receive Status Vector Channel/MAC Type/Data Rate Enable bit

If this bit is set, Channel, MAC type and Data Rate configurations used with the received frame are appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the encoding specified for CH<3:0>, FRMFMT and DR<2:0> (concatenated in this order when MSb is first).

1 = Append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields
0 = Do not append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

REGISTER 9-8: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 1 **RSVCFOEN:** Receive Status Vector CFO Enable bit

If bit is set, the estimated Carrier Frequency Offset of the received frame is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the same encoding as CFOMEAS register.

1 = Append CFO estimation
0 = Do not append estimated CFO

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

REGISTER 9-9: CCACON1 (CCA CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-001100
CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **CCABUSY:** Clear Channel Assessment Busy Flag bit

This bit represents the result of the latest CCA measurement.

1 = Medium is busy
0 = Medium is silent

bit 6 **CCAST:** Clear Channel Assessment Start bit(1)

By setting this register bit, the MCU triggers starting a new CCA measurement. This register bit is cleared by the hardware when the CCA measurement is done (EDCCAIF is set) and CCABUSY is valid.

bit 5-0 **RSSITHR<5:0>:** RSSI Threshold bits

This threshold is used in CCA operation when Energy detect or Energy and Carrier Sense mode is selected.

Representation: resolution of 2 dB/LSB

Note 1: RX chain should be turned on (RXEN = 1) to perform this measurement. Packet reception is not disabled during the measurement, its main purpose is testing.

REGISTER 9-10: EDCON (ENERGY DETECT CONTROL REGISTER)(1, 2)

R-00	R/W-01	R/W/HC-0	R/W-1110
r	EDMODE	EDST	EDLEN<3:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear		

bit 7-6 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 5 **EDMODE:** Energy Detect Mode Select bit

1 = Energy Detect Sampling Mode. ED duration is 128 µs. A single atomic RSSI-peak measurement is accomplished. The result is stored in EDPEAK<7:0> register.

0 = Energy Detect Scan Mode. ED duration is set by EDLEN<3:0>. The result is stored in EDMEAN<7:0> register.

bit 4 **EDST:** Energy Detect Measurement Start bit

By setting this register bit, the MCU triggers starting a new ED measurement. This register bit is cleared by the hardware when the ED measurement is done (EDCCAIF is not changed) and values in EDMEAN<7:0> and EDPEAK<7:0> are valid.

If the ED measurement is aborted (RX state is changed, or the EDST bit is cleared by the MCU) then EDCCAIF is not changed.

bit 3-0 **EDLEN<3:0>:** Energy Detect Measurement Length Field bits

Value *M* indicates a sequence of (M + 1) * 8 atomic RSSI-peak measurements, each having the duration of 128 µs. At the end of the aggregate measurement, the mean and the peak value of the sequence are available in EDMEAN<7:0> and EDPEAK<7:0>.

Note 1: The RX chain should be turned on (RXEN = 1) to perform this measurement. Packet reception is disabled during the measurement.

2: When EDLEN<3:0> = *M* = 0xE, then the 128 µs atomic measurements are preformed 120 times, which is equal to the a BaseSuperFrameDuration parameter in the IEEE 802.15.4 standard.

REGISTER 9-11: EDMEAN (ENERGY DETECT MEAN INDICATION REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-00000000	
EDMEAN<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-0 **EDMEAN<7:0>:** Energy Detect Mean Indication Field bits

Measured mean signal strength during ED/CCA measurement.

REGISTER 9-12: EDPEAK (ENERGY DETECT PEAK INDICATION REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-00000000
EDPEAK<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-0 **EDPEAK<7:0>:** Energy Detect Peak Indication Field bits

Measured peak signal strength during ED measurement.

Computation: The gain-compensated RSSI value is averaged over intervals of 128 µs. The peak value obtained from a sequence of such measurements is stored in EDPEAK, when EDMODE = 1.

TABLE 9-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH RSSI AND ED

Names	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
RXCON1	RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RXVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
CCACON1	CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>					
EDCON	r		EDMODE	EDST	EDLEN<3:0>			
EDMEAN	EDMEAN<7:0>							
EDPEAK	EDPEAK<7:0>							

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

9.6 Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)

Clear Channel Assessment is a function within CSMA/CA to determine whether the wireless medium is ready and able to receive data, therefore the transmitter can start sending the data.

CCA is implemented outside of the MAC. This allows the radio to transmit in the presence of interference from other wireless protocols that operate on the same frequency.

CCA may be performed using either Energy Detection (ED), Carrier Sense (CS) or a combination of both.

9.6.1 CCA CONFIGURATION

CCA is automatically executed (potentially multiple times) as part of the CSMA-CA procedure when the TXST register bit is set and CSMA-CA is enabled.

The following register bits are used in the configuration of CCA:

- CCAMODE<1:0>
- CCALEN<1:0>
- CCACSTHR<3:0>
- CCAEDTHR<5:0>

9.6.1.1 Energy Detection (ED) Only

When CCAMODE<1:0> = 10, the CCA will report a busy medium upon detecting energy above the energy detection threshold defined in the CCAEDTHR<7:0> register bits.

To use this method of CCA, the following configuration should be used:

- CCALEN<1:0> = Measurement duration
- CCAMODE<1:0> = 10
- CCAEDTHR<5:0> = RSSI threshold value

The mapping between the CCAEDTHR threshold and the power level is shown in Figure 9-4 and Equation 9-1.

9.6.1.2 Carrier Sense (CS) Only

When CCAMODE<1:0> = 01, the CCA will report a busy medium upon detecting of a signal with particular modulation and spreading characteristics.

To use this method of CCA, the following configuration should be used:

- CCALEN<1:0> = Measurement duration
- CCAMODE<1:0> = 01
- CCACSTHR<3:0> = Carrier sense threshold

9.6.1.3 Carrier Sense with Energy Detection

When CCAMODE<1:0> = 11, the CCA will report a busy medium upon detecting of a signal with particular modulation and spreading characteristics and energy above the energy detection threshold defined in the CCAEDTHR<5:0> register bits. To use this method of CCA, the following configuration should be used:

- CCALEN<1:0> = Measurement duration
- CCAMODE<1:0> = 11
- CCAEDTHR<5:0> = RSSI threshold value
- CCACSTHR<3:0> = Carrier sense threshold

9.6.2 CCA OPERATION

CCA is automatically initiated by MRF24XA, as part of the CSMA-CA algorithm. CCA operation can be requested independently for software CSMA-CA, or for test purpose through the CCAST bit.

REGISTER 9-13: OPSTATUS (OPERATION STATUS)[3]

R-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0
r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-3 **MACOP <3:0>:** MAC Operation Register Field bits[1, 2]

Provides status information on the current state of the MAC state machine. Encoding on MACOP<3:1>:

111 = Transmitting Acknowledge (TXACK)
110 = Receiving a packet (RXBUSY)
101 = Receiver listening to the channel waiting for packet (RX)
100 = Receiving (or waiting for) Acknowledge (RXACK)
011 = Transmitting a packet (TX)
010 = Performing Clear Channel Assessment (CCA)
001 = Back-off before repeated CCA (BO)
000 = MAC does not perform any operation (IDLE)

bit 2-0 RFOP <2:0>: Radio Operation Register Field bits

Provides status information on the current Radio state. Encoding on RFOP<2:0>:

111 = TX with external PA is turned on (TX+PA)
110 = RX with external LNA is turned on (RX+LNA)
101 = Synthesizer and external PA or LNA is turned on (SYNTH+PA/LNA)
100 = Radio is calibrating if CALST has been set by the host MCU, otherwise device malfunction (CAL/MAL)
011 = Analog transmit chain is activated (TX)
010 = Analog receiver chain is active (RX). (Digital may be partially shut off)
001 = Synthesizer is steady or ramping up or channel change is issued (SYNTH)
000 = Only the crystal oscillator is ON(OFF), (except when XTALSF = 1)

Note 1: GPIO<2:0> can be dedicated to output MACOP<3:1> or RFOP<2:0>. Refer to PINCON register, which specifies the pin configuration.

2: MACOP<0> is connected to RXBUFFUL register bit. It cannot be output over GPIO's.

3: OPSTATUS register is sent on the SDO pin during all SPI operation.

REGISTER 9-14: CCACON1 (CCA CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-001100
CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **CCABUSY:** Clear Channel Assessment Busy Flag bit

This bit represents the result of the latest CCA measurement.

1 = Medium is busy
0 = Medium is silent

bit 6 **CCAST:** Clear Channel Assessment Start bit(1)

By setting this register bit, the MCU triggers starting a new CCA measurement. This register bit is cleared by the hardware when the CCA measurement is done (EDCCAIF is set) and CCABUSY is valid.

bit 5-0 **RSSITHR<5:0>:** RSSI Threshold bits

This threshold is used in CCA operation when Energy detect or Energy and Carrier Sense mode is selected.

Representation: resolution of 2 dB/LSB

Note 1: RX chain should be turned on (RXEN = 1) to perform this measurement. Packet reception is not disabled during the measurement, and main purpose is testing.

REGISTER 9-15: CCACON2 (CCA CONTROL 2 REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-01	R/W-01
CSTHR<3:0>	CCALEN<1:0>	CCAMODE<1:0>
bit 7		bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **CSTHR<3:0>:** Carrier Sense Threshold Field bits

bit 3-2 **CCALEN<1:0>:** Clear Channel Assessment Length bits(2)

Value *N* indicates duration of 2^N * 32 µs.

bit 1-0 **CCAMODE<1:0>:** Clear Channel Assessment Mode Field bits(2)

11 = CCA Mode 3/a in the std. <1>: Energy AND Carrier Sense Threshold
10 = CCA Mode 2 in the std. <1>: Carrier Sense Threshold
01 = CCA Mode 1 in the std. <1>: Energy Detect Threshold (default)
00 = CCA Mode 3/b in the std.<1>: Energy OR Carrier Sense Threshold

Note 1: The IEEE 802.15.4 standard requires 128 µs. But shorter length is recommended when using higher rates with optimized preamble mode (RATECON.OPTIMAL = 1).

2: The measured RSSI result is stored in EDMEAN<7:0> register in all modes except in Mode 2.

REGISTER 9-16: EDMEAN (ENERGY DETECT MEAN INDICATION REGISTER)

R/HS/HC-00000000	
EDMEAN<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7-0 **EDMEAN<7:0>:** Energy Detect Mean Indication Field bits

Measured mean signal strength during ED/CCA measurement.

TABLE 9-5: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CCA

Names	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
OPSTATUS	r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
CCACON1	CCABUSY	CCAST	RSSITHR<5:0>					
CCACON2	CSTHR<3:0>				CCALEN<1:0>		CCAMODE<1:0>	
EDMEAN	EDMEAN<7:0>							

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

9.7 Physical Framing

Physical frame durations for the different data rates are shown in Table 9-6. Duration is expressed in payload byte time.

TABLE 9-6: FRAME DURATION

Frame Formats	T [µs/byte]	Duration expressed in payload byte time (T)			
		Preamble	SFD	Length	PHY payload
Proprietary 125 kbps	64	4	1	1	*N*
Standard 250 kbps	32	4	1	1	*N*
Proprietary 500 kbps	16	4	1	1	*N*
Proprietary 1 Mbps	8	4	1	1	*N*
Proprietary 2 Mbps	4	8	2	1	*N*

Different frame data rates are recognized and processed based on the recognized SFD field of the PHY frame. Figure 4-6 describes the basic PHY frame structure. The reception of the unwanted data rate frames can be disabled by RATECON<7:2> bits.

TABLE 9-7: USED SFD FIELDS FOR VARIOUS DATA RATES

Preamble Type	Data Rate Pattern	Used SFD Field	Fault Tolerance
Optimal	Pattern_2000	<SFD1, SFD6>	Exact match required
	Pattern_1000	<SFD2, SFD7>	Maximally two non-contiguous two-element burst error
	Pattern_500	SFD3	Exact match required
	Pattern_250 proprietary	SFD4	Exact match required
	Pattern_250 standard	0xA7	Exact match required
	Pattern_125	<SFD5, SFD6>	Maximally two faulty nibbles from four
Legacy	Pattern_2000	SFD1	Exact match required
	Pattern_1000	SFD2	Exact match required
	Pattern_500	SFD3	Exact match required
	Pattern_250 proprietary	SFD4	Exact match required
	Pattern_250 standard	0xA7	Exact match required
	Pattern_125	<SFD5, SFD6>	—

REGISTER 9-17: RATECON (RATE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **DIS2000:** Disable 2 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 2 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 6 **DIS1000:** Disable 1 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 1 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 5 **DIS500:** Disable 500 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 500 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 4 **DIS250**: Disable 250 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, the reception of 250 kbps frames with non-standard-compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 3 **DISSTD:** Disable IEEE 802.15.4 compliant Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with IEEE 802.15.4 compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 2 **DIS125:** Disable 125 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 125 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 1 **OPTIMAL:** Optimized Preamble Selection bit

When this bit is set, then optimized preamble is used instead of legacy.

1 = Optimized preamble
0 = Legacy preamble

bit 0 Out of scope

REGISTER 9-18: SFD1 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 1 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-00100001	
SFD1<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD1<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 1 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 0, and as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 1.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 2, 3, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits of SFD2.

REGISTER 9-19: SFD2 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 2 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11110001	
SFD2<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD2<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 2 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 0, and as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate when OPTIMAL = 1.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 1, 3, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits of SFD1.

REGISTER 9-20: SFD3 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 3 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-00111011	
SFD3<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD3<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 3 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 500 kbps rate.

When OPTIMAL = 0:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 1, 2, 4, 6, and the value 0xA7 is forbidden.

When OPTIMAL = 1:

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0.

REGISTER 9-21: SFD4 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 4 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11100101	
SFD4<7:0>	
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD4<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 4 Register Field bits

This octet is used as SFD pattern with 250 kbps rate when proprietary MAC is in use, otherwise the pattern defined in the standard <1> is used instead, that is, 0xA7.

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, where, k = 1, 2, 3, 6 when **OPTIMAL** = 0. The value 0xA7 is forbidden.

REGISTER 9-22: SFD5 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 5 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-01001101
SFD5<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD5<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 5 Register Field bits

This octet is used as the MSB of the SFD pattern with 125 kbps rate.

REGISTER 9-23: SFD6 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 6 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-10101000
SFD6<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD6<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 6 Register Field bits

This octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 125 kbps rate. When OPTIMAL = 1, this octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 2 Mbps rate.

The hexadecimal digits must be different from 0x0 and different from the corresponding digits in SFD<k>, k = 1, 2, 3, 4 when OPTIMAL = 0. The value 0xA7 is forbidden.

REGISTER 9-24: SFD7 (START FRAME DELIMITER PATTERN 7 CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-11001000
SFD7<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **SFD7<7:0>:** Start Frame Delimiter Pattern 7 Register Field bits

When OPTIMAL = 1, this octet is used as the LSB of the SFD pattern with 1 Mbps rate.

9.8 Start-of-Frame Delimiter (SFD) Detection

The following sections describe the SFD detection mechanism for the different data rates.

Header processing is required to work at least as reliably as the demodulation. To meet this requirement, longer preamble and 16-bit SFD is defined for frames where the payload data rate is lower than the air data rate of the preamble.

9.8.1 SFD DETECTION AT 125 kbps

The input contains a nibble of bits decoded from the received DSSS symbol. This input is updated on every new DSSS symbol received.

After each update the latest four received nibbles are compared against the nibbles contained in the 16-bit SFD pattern that has been configured by the host MCU. At least three out of four nibbles must match to trigger an SFD_FOUND event.

SFD_TIMEOUT occurs if the latest five nibbles are different from “0000” (preamble lost) while SFD_FOUND is not triggered. Reception is reset on SFD_TIMEOUT.

For the 125 kbps data rate the last decoded four nibbles and the nibbles of pattern_125 must match in at least three nibble positions.

9.8.2 SFD DETECTION AT 1 Mbps

The input contains a byte, which is updated on every new byte received after the first preamble byte has been detected (this identifies the byte boundary). The two latest received bytes form a word of 16 bits, denoted by W.

SFD_FOUND event is reported if W exactly matches the host configured 16-bit preamble pattern (SFD), or if an approximate match is found with the following error patterns:

- SFD XOR W = 110...0110…0 (two error bursts of length 2)
- SFD XOR W = 10...0110…01 (single error burst of length 2, and single error on either or both ends)
  SFD XOR W = 0...0110…0 (single error burst of length 2)
- SFD XOR W = 0...010…0 (single error)

The rationale behind selecting these patterns is that the maximum-likelihood demodulator tends to produce error bursts of length 2 due to the trellis of the MSK modulation (this particular tolerance scheme seems to be novel).

SFD_TIMEOUT event is reported if the latest three octets are different from 0x0F0F0F, while SFD_FOUND is not triggered. Reception is reset on SFD_TIMEOUT.

At 1 Mbps the match tolerates single bit or maximum 2 non-contiguous 2-bit burst differences in the comparison of the last received 16 bits and pattern_1000 (simultaneously isolated single bit mismatches at both ends of the pattern constitute a single 2-bit mismatch burst).

9.9 Physical Transmissions

As TXST is set by the MCU, TXST = 1, transmitting starts by setting TXST to '1'. TXMAIF, TXSFDIF and RXSFDIF flags are handled. RXSFDIF is handled even with ACK. External PA/LNA is automatically handled.

Refer to **Section 9.13 "External Power Amplifier (PA)/ Low-Noise Amplifier (LNA)"** for more information on this mode.

Channel, data rate and link adaptation is based on retransmission, and the information is from the receiver.

REGISTER 9-25: TXPOW (TRANSMIT POWER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-000	R/W-11111
CHIPBOOST<2:0>	TXPOW<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 **CHIPBOOST<2:0>:** TX Chip Boosting Field bits

This field modifies the spectrum of the OQPSK transmission.

bit 4-0 **TXPOW<4:0>:** TX Power Register Field bits

This field allows configuring the TX power ranging from -17.5 to 0 dBm. Encoding:

10101 = 0 dBm
•
•
•
00001 = -17.5 dBm
00000 = PA OFF

9.10 Signal Detection (Power-Save Listen Mode)

In Power-Save Listen Mode only the RX front end circuit is powered, the baseband is switched off. In this mode, approximately 3 mA receive current can be saved. This mode can be used by setting the PSAV bit to '1'.

Note:	In this mode, MRF24XA consumes less current that causes sensitivity degradation.

TABLE 9-8: RECOMMENDED SETTINGS FOR POWER-SAVE LISTEN MODE

Thresholds	125/250/ Legacy	500 kbps	1 Mbps	2 Mbps
DesensThr	0x3	0x4	0x5	0x5
PsavThr	0x9	0xC	0xF	0xF

REGISTER 9-26: RATECON (RATE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-1	R/W-1
DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **DIS2000:** Disable 2 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 2 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 6 **DIS1000:** Disable 1 Mbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 1 Mbps frames is disabled.

bit 5 **DIS500:** Disable 500 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 500 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 4 **DIS250:** Disable 250 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with non-standard-compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 3 **DISSTD:** Disable IEEE 802.15.4 compliant Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 250 kbps frames with IEEE 802.15.4 compliant SFD patterns is disabled.

bit 2 **DIS125:** Disable 125 kbps Frame Reception bit

If this bit is set, then reception of 125 kbps frames is disabled.

bit 1 **OPTIMAL:** Optimized Preamble Selection bit

When this bit is set, then optimized preamble is used instead of legacy.

1 = Optimized preamble
0 = Legacy preamble

bit 0 **PSAV:** Power-Save Mode Selection bit

When this bit is set, frame detection is dependent on the RSSI signal, and the receive signal processor is turned on when a sudden and significant increase (PSAVTHR<3:0>) is detected in the signal strength or the signal strength is above an absolute level (DESENSTHR<3:0>).

1 = Power-Save mode
0 = Hi-Sensitivity mode

REGISTER 9-27: POWSAVE (POWER-SAVE CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R/W-1010	R/W-1010
DESENSTHR<3:0>	PSAVTHR<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-4 **DESENSTHR<3:0>:** Desensitization Threshold Field bits

This field defines an absolute level on the RSSI signal to activate receive signal processor if PSAV = 1.

Unit is: 4 dB/LSB. Unsigned encoding is used.

bit 3-0 **PSAVTHR<3:0>:** Frame Detection Threshold Register Field bits

This field defines a relative (relative to the last 4 μs RSSI value) threshold level on the RSSI signal to activate receive signal processor if and only if PSAV = 1.

Unit is 0.5 dB/LSB. Unsigned encoding is used.

TABLE 9-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH POWER-SAVE LISTEN MODE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
RATECON	DIS2000	DIS1000	DIS500	DIS250	DISSTD	DIS125	OPTIMAL	PSAV
POWSAVE	DESENSTHR<3:0>				PSAVTHR<3:0>			

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

9.11 AFC

AFC circuit of MRF24XA measures Carrier Frequency Offset (CFO), for all the received packets. The measured value is interpreted as the frequency offset between the two communicating nodes.

Note:	AFC circuit stores CFO value in CFO-MEAS field after the SFD is detected and clears the field as the frame processing is finished and RXIF interrupt is generated. CFOTX is used as digital CFO compensation for transmitting. CFORX is used as digital CFO compensation for receiving.

REGISTER 9-28: CFOCON (CFO PRE COMPENSATION REGISTER)

R/W-0000	R/W-0000
CFOTX<3:0>	CFORX<3:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7-4 **CFOTX<3:0>:** TX Carrier Frequency Offset Field bits

This value can be written by the host to compensate for the carrier frequency offset of the node during transmission. Pre-compensation allows using crystals with wider tolerances.

Frequency Offset Unit is: 13 ppm/LSB. Two's complement encoding.

bit 3-0 **CFORX<3:0>:** RX Carrier Frequency Offset Field bits

This value can be written by the host to pre-compensate the Carrier Frequency Offset estimation window (±55 ppm).

Frequency Offset Unit is: 13 ppm/LSB. Two's complement encoding.

REGISTER 9-29: CFOMEAS (CFO MEASUREMENT INDICATION REGISTER)

R/W-00000000
CFOMEAS<7:0>
bit 7 bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-0 **CFOMEAS<7:0>:** CFO Measurement Field bits

If AFCOVR bit is cleared, then this register is written and valid when RXSFDIF is set with the value of the carrier frequency offset that was estimated during the acquisition of the packet. The host may use this value together with the LQI as a preamble quality indication (the LQI is measured over the CFO compensated payload).

If AFCOVR bit is set, this receiver will compensate the carrier frequency offset. Note that in this case, the CFO estimation algorithm is disabled, thus ±13 ppm CFO can be tolerated. CFORX has no effect when AFCOVR is set.

Frequency Offset Unit is: ~1.62 ppm/LSB of the 2.4 GHz carrier. Two's complement encoding is used.

9.12 Receive Status Vector (RSV)(1, 2)

The received packet can be extended by RSV, that gives extra information about the link. RSV bits can be individually enabled.

Note 1: LENGTH field of the packet is not affected by RSV.

2: LQI, RSSI, CHDR and CFO are the order of appending the CRC.

REGISTER 9-30: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER)

R/W/HC/HS-0	R/W-0	R/W/HC-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0
RXEN	NOPA	RXDEC	RSVLQIEN	RSVRSSIEN	RSVCHDREN	RSVCFOEN	r
bit 7							bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved	HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **RXEN:** Receive Enable Field bit

This bit enables/disables the packet reception. If an RX packet is currently being received, clearing this bit will cause that packet to be discarded.

1 = RX enabled
0 = RX disabled

Hardware clear/set when:

- Cleared when TRXMODE is set to TX-Streaming mode
- Set when TRXMODE is set to RX-Streaming mode

Clearing this bit will abort the current operation in the following cases:

- Receiving a packet in Packet mode or in RX-Streaming mode

The most RX related settings should only be changed while this bit is cleared.

The clear channel assessment (CSMAEN) and ACK-frame reception does not require RXEN = 1, because the device will turn the radio into RX when needed, irrespective of the status of the RXEN bit.

bit 6 **NOPA:** No Parsing bit

This bit will disable packet parsing. Only CRC will be checked, if it is enabled. This feature is useful in Sniffer mode.

1 = Disable packet parsing
0 = Enable packet parsing

bit 5 **RXDEC:** RX Decryption bit

Setting this bit will start RX security processing (authentication and/or decryption) on the last received packet.

1 = RX security processing started/in process. RXDECIF or RXTAGIF is set.
0 = RX security processing inactive or complete

This bit will clear itself after RX decryption has completed.

bit 4 **RSVLQIEN:** Receive Status Vector LQI Enable bit

If bit is set, the measured Link Quality is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append LQI field
0 = Do not append LQI field

bit 3 **RSVRSSIEN:** Receive Status Vector RSSI Enable bit

If bit is set, the measured RSSI is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer.

1 = Append RSSI field
0 = Do not append RSSI field

bit 2 **RSVCHDREN:** Receive Status Vector Channel/MAC Type/Data Rate Enable bit

If bit is set, Channel, MAC type and Data Rate configurations used with the received frame are appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the encoding specified for CH<3:0>, FRMFMT and DR<2:0> (concatenated in this order when MSb is first).

1 = Append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields
0 = Do not append Channel, MAC type and Data Rate fields

REGISTER 9-30: RXCON1 (MAC RECEIVE CONTROL 1 REGISTER) (CONTINUED)

bit 1 **RSVCFOEN:** Receive Status Vector CFO Enable bit

If bit is set, the estimated Carrier Frequency Offset of the received frame is appended after the received frame in the packet buffer, using the same encoding as CFOMEAS register.

1 = Append CFO estimation
0 = Do not append estimated CFO

bit 0 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

9.13 External Power Amplifier (PA)/ Low-Noise Amplifier (LNA)

MRF24XA has a PA control pin (pin 20) and an LNA control pin (pin 21) to handle external PAs and LNAs or external antenna switch circuits. MRF24XA can also tolerate different start up times of different external circuits by sending or accepting data just if the external circuits have completed their ramp up. MRF24XA can handle both active-high or active-low control signal sensitive circuits.

9.13.1 EXTERNAL PA HANDLING

MRF24XA can switch ON and OFF external PA circuits automatically as the internal functionalities require to transmit any signal. PA pin is automatically set to its preset active state as external PA is needed and set back to its inactive state if PA is not needed.

To enable external PA handling, PAEN bit of EXTPA register must be set to '1'. The active state of PA control line can be set by EXTPAP bit. The current value of EXTPAP bit is the active state of the PA line. RFOP<2:0>, field of the Radio Operation Register shows the status of the radio and external PA.

9.13.1.1 PA Switch Time Management

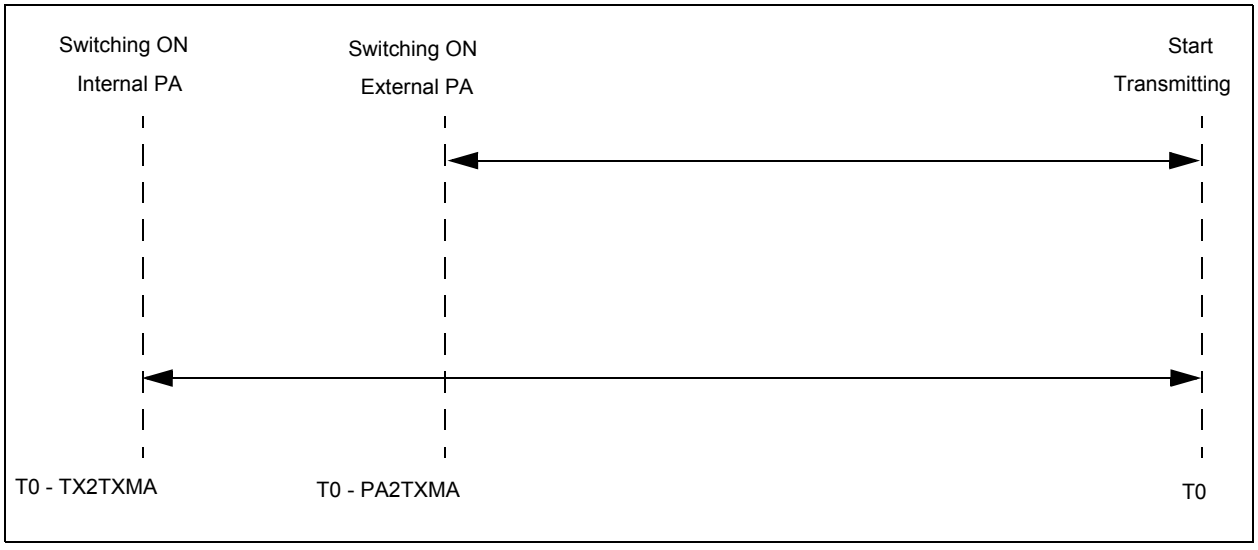
MRF24XA can be used with various external PA circuits. Different PA circuits might have different start-up time constraints to reach the steady state. MRF24XA can manage to start transmitting if both the internal and external PA circuits are ready to operate.

TX2TXMA<4:0>, Transmit Power-up to Medium Access Configuration, defines the time delay that MRF24XA waits after powering on the internal PA before sending any data to transmit. Its POR default value is calculated to cover most of the cases, but user can redefine its value if needed.

PA2TXMA<4:0>, External Power Amplifier Power-up to Medium Access Configuration, defines the time delay that MRF24XA waits after powering on the external PA before sending any data to transmit.

Figure 9-5 illustrates the method of PA time management of MRF24XA.

FIGURE 9-5: PA ACCESS TIME MANAGEMENT



9.13.2 EXTERNAL LNA HANDLING

MRF24XA can switch ON and OFF external LNA circuit automatically as the internal functionalities require receiving. LNA pin is automatically set to its predefined active state as external LNA circuit is needed, and set back to its inactive state if LNA is not needed.

To enable external LNA handling, LNAEN bit of the EXTLNA register must be set to '1'. The active state of LNA line can be set by EXTLNAP bit. The actual value of EXTLNAP bit is the active state of the LNA line.

MRF24XA can be programmed to delay signal receiving after powering on the external LNA circuit. It allows to optimize the power consumption to the startup time of the external LNA circuit. LNADLY<4:0> defines the time delay between LNA power up and the start of signal reception. The time base is 1 µs. Higher LNADLY value means longer wait before starting reception. RFOP<2:0> field of the Radio Operation register shows the status of the radio and external LNA.

REGISTER 9-31: OPSTATUS (OPERATION STATUS)

R-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0	R/HS/HC-0
r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved		HC = Hardware Clear	HS = Hardware Set	

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6-3 Out of scope

bit 3 **RFOP <2:0>:** Radio Operation Register Field bits

Provides status information on the current Radio state. Encoding on RFOP<2:0>:

111 = TX with external PA is turned on (TX+PA)
110 = RX with external LNA is turned on (RX+LNA)
101 = Synthesizer and external PA or LNA is turned on (SYNTH+PA/LNA)

REGISTER 9-32: TX2TXMA (TRANSMIT POWER-UP TO MEDIUM ACCESS CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-00011
r	TX2TXMA<4:0>
bit 7	bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7-5 Reserved: Maintain as '0'

bit 4-0 **TX2TXMA<4:0>:** Transmit Power-Up to Medium Access Configuration Field bits

Defines the time interval between turning on the transmitter of the device and the start time of medium access (start of the PHY-layer frame).

TX_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the transmitter, in the following scenarios:

PAEN = 0

PAEN = 1, but the PA is turned on first. PA_TO_TXMA = TX_TO_TXMA + PA transient time.

PAEN = 1, but the TX and PA transients are NOT sequenced.

TX_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the transmitter + PA_TO_TXMA:

PAEN = 1, and the transmitter is turned on first (transients are sequenced).

Representation: 1 μs/1 LSB. No offset.

REGISTER 9-33: EXTPA (EXTERNAL POWER AMPLIFIER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-00100
r	EXTPAP	PAEN	PA2TXMA<4:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend:	R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR		'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved				

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **EXTPAP:** External Power Amplifier Polarity bit

1 = 3.3V turns Power Amplifier ON
0 = GND turns Power Amplifier ON

bit 5 **PAEN:** External Power Amplifier Enable bit

This bit enables the PA pin to output the control signal for external Power Amplifier.

bit 4-0 **PA2TXMA<4:0>:** External Power Amplifier Power-up to Medium Access Configuration Field bits

Defines the time interval between turning on the external PA of the device and the start time of medium access (start of the PHY-layer frame).

PA_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the external PA, in the following scenarios:

PAEN = 1, and the transmitter is turned on first. TX_TO_TXMA = PA_TO_TXMA + TX transient time.

PAEN = 1, but the TX and PA transients are NOT sequenced.

PA_TO_TXMA = The transient time of the PA + TX_TO_TXMA:

PAEN = 1, and the external power amplifier is turned on first (Transients are sequenced).

Representation: 1 μs/1 LSB. No offset

REGISTER 9-34: EXTLNA (EXTERNAL LOW-NOISE AMPLIFIER CONFIGURATION REGISTER)

R-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-00100
r	EXTLNAP	LNAEN	LNADLY<4:0>
bit 7			bit 0

Legend: R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown
r = Reserved			

bit 7 **Reserved:** Maintain as '0'

bit 6 **EXTLNAP:** External Low Noise Amplifier Polarity bit

1 = 3.3V turns Low-Noise Amplifier ON
0 = GND turns Low-Noise Amplifier ON

bit 5 **LNAEN:** External Low-Noise Power Amplifier Enable bit

This bit enables the LNA pin to output the control signal for external Low-Noise Amplifier.

bit 4-0 **LNADLY<4:0>:** External Low-Noise Amplifier Power-Up Transient Delay Field bits

Defines the duration between turning on the LNA and the time when the reception is valid.

LNA and receiver are turned on together. The longer transient is awaited before input signal is accepted as valid.

Representation: 1 μs/1 LSB. No offset.

TABLE 9-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH EXTERNAL PA AND LNA

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OPSTATUS	r	MACOP<3:0>				RFOP<2:0>		
TX2TXMA	r			TX2TXMA<4:0>				
EXTPA	r	EXTPAP	PAEN	PA2TXMA<4:0>				
EXTLNA	r	EXTLNAP	LNAEN	LNADLY<4:0>				

Legend: r = Reserved, read as '0'.

10.0 BATTERY LIFE OPTIMIZATION

In a battery operated application, the device wakes up only when it needs to transmit or requires to poll for data. Polling is used for data reception as a means to synchronize the remotely transmitting node to the wake-up event in the receiver. Between transmission and reception the device should be held in Deep Sleep mode drawing less current than the battery self-discharge, which is about 1 µA. Register contents and internal calibration state are maintained in Deep Sleep mode for efficient power mode changes. Long battery life is achieved through low currents in each state of the device and a series of system features that contribute to minimize the duration required for transmit or receive.

The following enhanced features are used to minimize radio ON-time:

- High air-data-rates to minimize the packet duration
- Automatic, on-the-fly, per-frame, air-data-rate adaptation in the receiver, allowing the transmitter to select the highest data rate that fits the quality of the link
- Minimized framing overheads in both the PHY and the MAC layers
- Minimized ramp-up and turnaround times
- Short, still reliable channel assessment
- Automatically handled TX and RX signal paths
- Inferred destination addressing

On-the-fly, per-frame air-data-rate detection is the capability of the receiver to synchronize to the transmitter data rate without knowing the sender of the frame and the expected data rate in advance. On-the-fly, per-frame, air-data-rate detection gives the following advantages:

- Each low-power node can use the highest data rate allowed by its link quality to save its battery charge. The evaluation of the link quality requires MCU interaction.
- Multiple data rates can be used within the same network.

As opposed to conventional protocols supporting the simultaneous use of multiple air-data-rates in the network traffic, the frame header, which encodes the payload data rate, does not have to use the lowest data rate. Without this feature either the worst link would define the air data-rate that all nodes have to use, or each node would have to use the lowest data rate for the frame header, which would severely compromise the throughput and battery efficiency of the highest rates.

Passive listening, channel assessment and the duration of the turnaround between transmit and receive contribute to the power consumption.

In this regard, MRF24XA excels by minimized TX-to-RX turnaround durations, fast but reliable channel assessment and short PLL and AGC ramp-up durations. Power modes are sequenced automatically during CSMA sending by the internal state machines of the device without interaction from the MCU. These mechanisms can optionally control external PA and LNA.

The Message Chart in Figure 10-1 illustrates a typical wake-up cycle:

1. While the low-power device is in Deep Sleep mode, the coordinator listens to the channel and buffers any messages addressed to the low-power node.
2. The low-power node wakes up when it needs to transmit, or periodically to poll the coordinator for any pending data.
3. First, the low-power node sends a poll command to the coordinator and any data it needs to send.
4. Low-power node can go back to Deep Sleep mode as soon as it gets an ACK unless the coordinator has buffered pending data. This condition is indicated in a specific bit field of the acknowledge frame that the coordinator is sending.
5. In the case of pending data, the low-power node may want to turn off the radio for a predetermined duration allowing the coordinator to retrieve the pending data for sending.
6. Finally, the coordinator goes to Receive mode to get the pending data. On successful reception, it turns to transmit to send an ACK and returns to Deep Sleep mode.
7. Time-outs ensure that the low-power node does not stay powered-up forever in the case when the coordinator fails to respond in any of the transactions above.

As indicated on the right side of Figure 10-1all the radio activities are kept as short as possible by the device to be able to return to Deep Sleep mode as fast as possible.

As a result, the average current consumption can be reduced by multiple factors in comparison to the standard IEEE 802.15.4 operation. The comparison is done for three corner cases, as given below:

- Table 10-1 for polling without pending data
- Table 10-2 for polling with 80 octets pending data
- Table 10-3 for the transmission of 80 octets

A combination of the three cases allow evaluating the energy budget of complex scenarios. A yearly 10 mAh is to be added for battery self-discharge and Deep Sleep mode. Equation 10-1 shows the self discharge current calculation. The consumption of the MCU and any sensors, displays needs to be added.

The enhanced MAC and PHY feature set also compresses the frame header time to achieve the shortest possible radio ON-time.

EQUATION 10-1: BATTERY SELF-DISCHARGE

The discharge caused by 1 µA average current over one year: 1µA x 1 year = 8.76 mAh

TABLE 10-1: POLLING FOR PENDING DATA – NO PENDING DATA IS AVAILABLE(1)

Wake-up		Consumed Battery Charge		Unit
Mode	Period	2 Mbps Extended Data Rate	802.15.4 Compliant Mode	
Single wake-up	per wake-up	4480	17450	mA*µs = nC
Yearly average while waking up regularly in every	1s	39.3	152.9	mAh/year = µA
	20s	2	7.6	mAh/year = µA
	1 min	0.7	2.5	mAh/year = µA
	5 min	0.1	0.5	mAh/year = µA

Note 1: The calculations are strongly depended on the used protocol. It may happen that a given protocol cannot produce the listed battery life values.

TABLE 10-2: POLLING FOR PENDING DATA – 80 OCTETS OF PENDING DATA RECEIVED(1)

Wake-up		Consumed Battery Charge		Unit
Mode	Period	2 Mbps Extended Data Rate	802.15.4 Compliant Mode	
Single wake-up	per wake-up	12030	62620	mA*us = nC
Yearly average while waking up regularly in every	1s	163.7	936.7	mAh/year = µA
	20s	8.2	46.8	mAh/year = µA
	1 min	2.7	15.6	mAh/year = µA
	5 min	0.5	3.1	mAh/year = µA

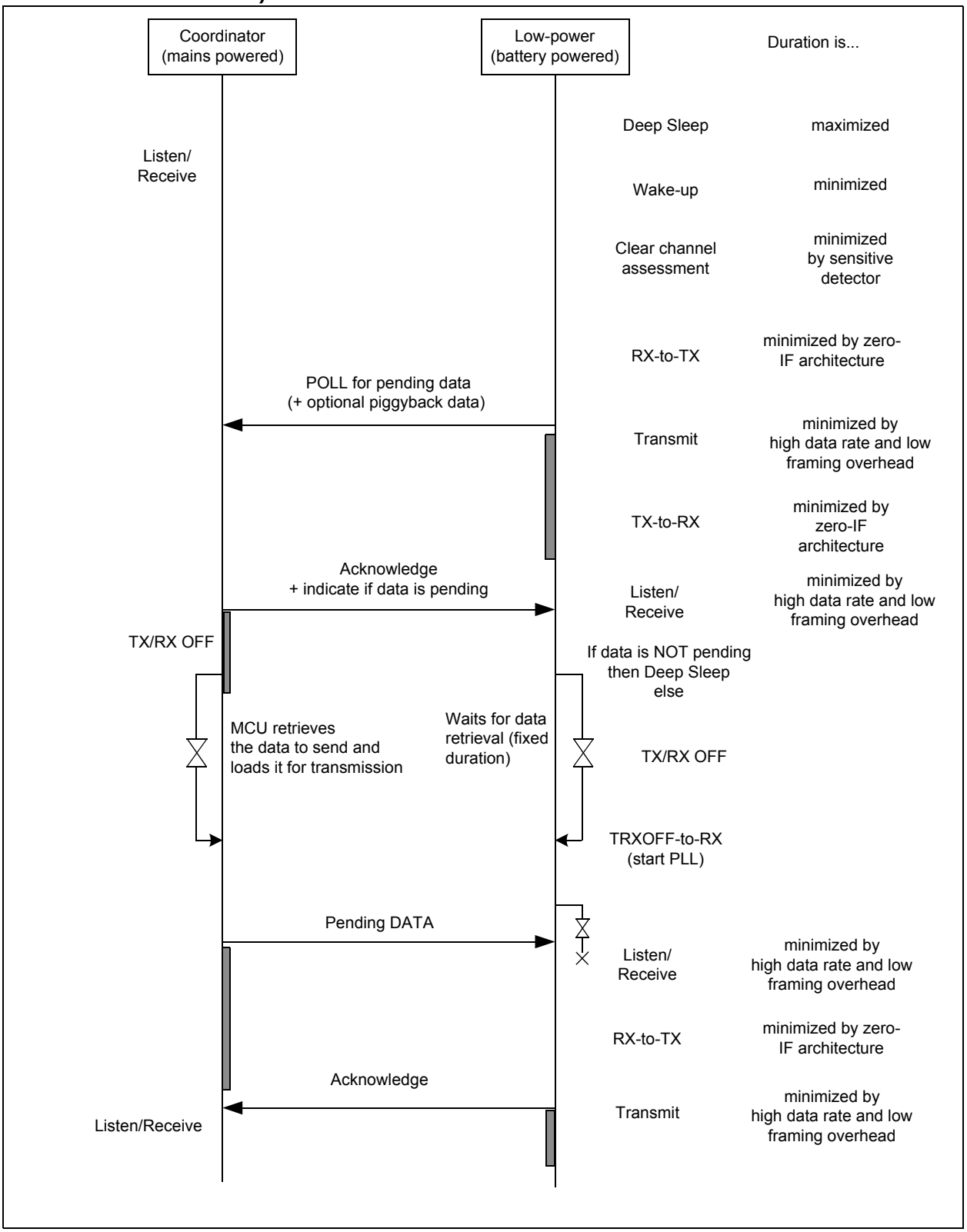
Note 1: The calculations are strongly depended on the used protocol. It may happen that a given protocol cannot produce the listed battery life values.

TABLE 10-3: POLLING FOR PENDING DATA – TRANSMITTING 80 OCTETS TO COORDINATOR (AS PIGGYBACK DATA – NO PENDING RECEIVED DATA)(1)

Wake-up		Consumed Battery Charge		Unit
Mode	Period	2 Mbps Extended Data Rate	802.15.4 Compliant Mode	
Single wake-up	per wake-up	10560	66090	mA*us = nC
Yearly average while waking up regularly in every	1s	92.5	579	mAh/year = µA
	20s	4.6	28.9	mAh/year = µA
	1 min	1.5	9.6	mAh/year = µA
	5 min	0.3	1.9	mAh/year = µA

Note 1: The calculations are strongly depended on the used protocol. It may happen that a given protocol cannot produce the listed battery life values.

FIGURE 10-1: MRF24XA POWER MODES DURING DATA POLLING (MESSAGE SEQUENCE CHART)



NOTES:

11.0 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Absolute Maximum Ratings

Ambient temperature under bias ..... -40°C to +85°C
Storage temperature ..... -40°C to +125°C
Voltage on any digital or analog pin with respect to VSS (except VDD) ..... -0.3V to (VDD + 0.3V)
Voltage on VDD with respect to VSS ..... -0.3V to 6V
Maximum output current sunk by GPIO0-GPIO2 pins ..... 2mA at 0.3xVDD
Maximum output current sourced by GPIO0-GPIO2 pins ..... 2mA at 0.3xVDD

Note: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure to maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

TABLE 11-1: RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

Parameter	Min.	Typ	Max.	Units
Ambient Operating Temperature	-40	+25	+85	°C
Supply Voltage for RF, analog (AVDD) and digital circuits (DVDD)	1.08	1.2	1.32	V
Supply Voltage for LDO Input (pin 30) and digital I/O (pin 23)	1.5	3.3	3.6	V
Input High Voltage (VIH)	0.65 x VDD	—	VDD +0.3	V
Input Low Voltage (VIL)	-0.3	—	0.35 x VDD	V

TABLE 11-2: CURRENT CONSUMPTION

Typical Values: TA = 25°C, VDD = 3.3V

Operating mode	Condition	Min.	Typ	Max.	Units
Deep Sleep	All GPIO pins are grounded	—	40	—	nA
Sleep	—	—	0.3	—	mA
Crystal ON	—	—	1	—	mA
Synthesizer ON	—	—	7	—	mA
RX Listen Power-Save	All data rates	—	13.5	—	mA
RX Listen	All data rates	—	16.5	—	mA
RX Packet Demodulation	1 Mbps or 2 Mbps	—	15.5	—	mA
RX Packet Demodulation	500 kbps, 250 kbps or 125 kbps	—	16.5	—	mA
TX	at maximum power	—	25	—	mA

TABLE 11-3: RECEIVER CHARACTERISTICS

Typical Values: T_A = 25°C, V_{DD} = 3.3V

Parameters	Condition	Min.	Typ	Max.	Units
RF Input Frequency	—	2.405	—	2.480	GHz
RF Sensitivity	Data Rate: 250 kbps, PER 1%	—	-95	—	dBm
	125 kbps at 0 ppm CFO	—	-103	—	
	at +/- 110 ppm CFO	—	-100	—	
	250 kbps at 0 ppm CFO	—	-100	—	
	at +/- 110 ppm CFO	—	-99	—	
	500 kbps: Legacy and Optimal framing	—	—	—	
	at 0 ppm CFO	—	-97	—	
	at +/- 110 ppm CFO	—	-96	—	
	1 Mbps: Legacy framing	—	—	—	
	at 0 ppm CFO	—	-92	—	
	at +/- 110 ppm CFO	—	-92	—	
	Optimal framing	—	—	—	
	at 0 ppm CFO	—	-91	—	
	at +/- 85 ppm CFO	—	-89	—	
	2 Mbps: Legacy framing	—	—	—	
	at 0 ppm CFO	—	-88	—	
	at +/- 110 ppm CFO	—	-88	—	
	Optimal framing	—	—	—	
	at 0 ppm CFO	—	-87	—	
	at +/- 85 ppm CFO	—	-86	—	
Maximum RF Input	—	—	-10	—	dBm
LO Leakage	Measured at balun matching network input at frequency 2.405 GHz-2.48 GHz	—	TBD	—	dBm
Adjacent Channel Rejection	at ±5 MHz	—	32	—	dB
Alternate Channel Rejection	at ±10 MHz	—	45	—	dB
RSSI Range	—	—	75	—	dB
RSSI Error	—	—	—	± 5	dB

TABLE 11-4: TRANSMITTER CHARACTERISTICS

Typical Values: T_A = 25°C, V_{DD} = 3.3V

Parameters	Condition	Min.	Typ	Max.	Units
RF Carrier Frequency	—	2.405	—	2.480	GHz
Maximum RF Output Power	—	—	0	—	dBm
RF Output Power Control Range	—	—	17.5	—	dB
Carrier Suppression	—	—	TBD	—	dBc
TX Spectrum Mask for O-QPSK Signal	Offset frequency >3.5 MHz, at 0 dBm output power	—	-35	—	dBm
TX EVM	—	—	TBD	—	%

FIGURE 11-1: EXAMPLE SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING

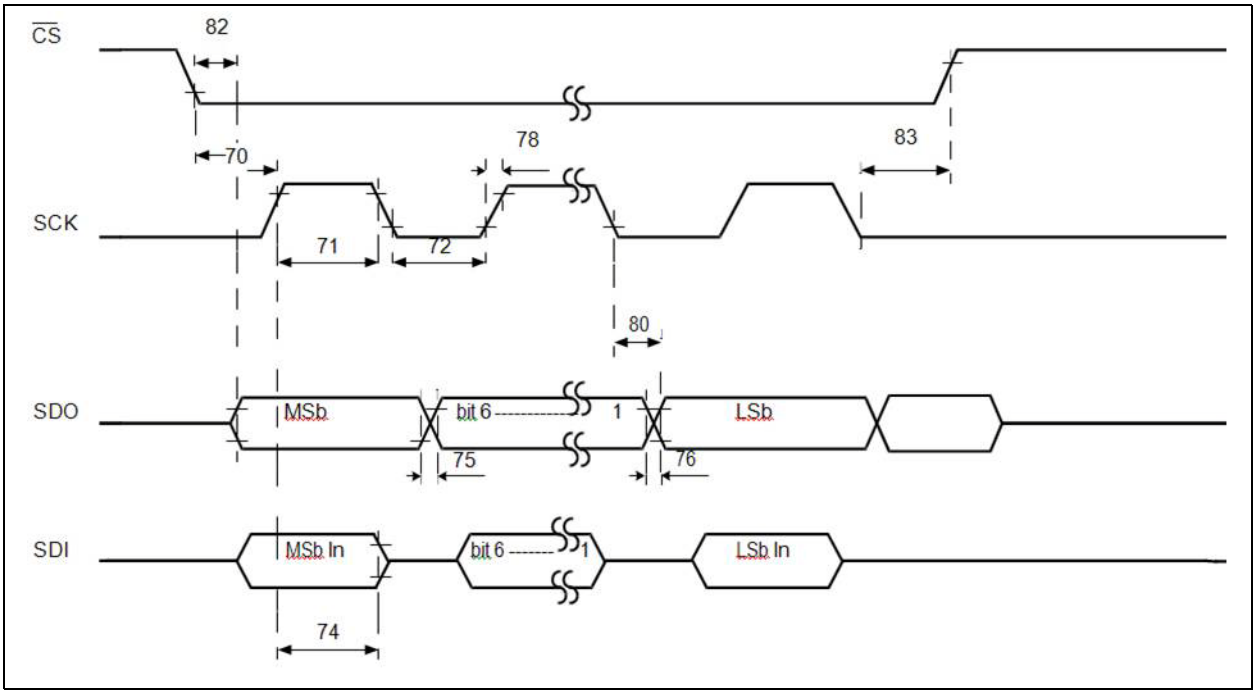


TABLE 11-5: EXAMPLE SLAVE MODE REQUIREMENTS

Parameter Number	Symbol	Characteristic	Min.	Max.	Units
70	TssL2scH	$\overline{CS}$ ↓ to SCK ↑ Input	50	—	ns
71	TscH	SCK Input High Time	50	—	ns
72	TscL	SCK Input Low Time	50	—	ns
74	TscH2diL	Hold Time of SDI Data Input to SCK Edge	25	—	ns
75	TdoR	SDO Data Output Rise Time	—	25	ns
76	TdoF	SDO Data Output Fall Time	—	25	ns
78	TscR	SCK Output RiseTime	—	25	ns
80	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after SCK Edge	50	—	ns
82	TssL2doV	SDO Data Output Valid after NCS ↓ Edge	50	—	ns
83	TssL2ssH	NCS ↑ after SCK Edge	50	—	ns

NOTES:

12.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

Note: This section will be updated in a future revision of this document.

NOTES:

APPENDIX A: REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (August 2011)

This is the initial released version of the document.

Revision B (March 2013)

Major formatting and text updates have been incorporated throughout the document

NOTES:

THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support through our WWW site at www.microchip.com. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQs), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at www.microchip.com. Under "Support", click on "Customer Change Notification" and follow the registration instructions.

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

Technical support is available through the web site at: http://microchip.com/support

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

TO: Technical Publications Manager Total Pages Sent _____

RE: Reader Response

From: Name _____

Company _____

Address _____

City / State / ZIP / Country _____

Telephone: (_____) _____ - _____ FAX: (_____) _____ - _____

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? ___Y ___N

Device: MRF24XA Literature Number: DS700050

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

7. How would you improve this document?

PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, for example, on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	M.	X	T	-X
Device	module	Module Type	Tape and Reel	Temperature Range

Device	MRF24XA; V_{DD} range 1.5V to 3.6V
Temperature Range	I = -40º C to +85º C (Industrial)

Example:

a) MRF24XA -I/ = Industrial temp. tray.

NOTES:

INDEX

NOTES:

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

Trademarks


Printed on recycled paper.

ISBN: 978-1-62077-120-4

QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CERTIFIED BY DNV
ISO/TS 16949

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2009 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona; Gresham, Oregon and design centers in California and India. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PIC® MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.

Worldwide Sales and Service

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support:
http://www.microchip.com/support
Web Address:
www.microchip.com

Atlanta
Duluth, GA
Tel: 678-957-9614
Fax: 678-957-1455

Boston
Westborough, MA
Tel: 774-760-0087
Fax: 774-760-0088

Chicago
Itasca, IL
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Cleveland
Independence, OH
Tel: 216-447-0464
Fax: 216-447-0643

Dallas
Addison, TX
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Farmington Hills, MI
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Indianapolis
Noblesville, IN
Tel: 317-773-8323
Fax: 317-773-5453

Los Angeles
Mission Viejo, CA
Tel: 949-462-9523
Fax: 949-462-9608

Santa Clara
Santa Clara, CA
Tel: 408-961-6444
Fax: 408-961-6445

Toronto
Mississauga, Ontario, Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Asia Pacific Office
Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor
Tower 6, The Gateway
Harbour City, Kowloon
Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

Australia - Sydney
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Tel: 86-10-8569-7000
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

China - Chengdu
Tel: 86-28-8665-5511
Fax: 86-28-8665-7889

China - Chongqing
Tel: 86-23-8980-9588
Fax: 86-23-8980-9500

China - Hangzhou
Tel: 86-571-2819-3187
Fax: 86-571-2819-3189

China - Hong Kong SAR
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Nanjing
Tel: 86-25-8473-2460
Fax: 86-25-8473-2470

China - Qingdao
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

China - Shanghai
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

China - Shenyang
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

China - Shenzhen
Tel: 86-755-8203-2660
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

China - Wuhan
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

China - Xian
Tel: 86-29-8833-7252
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

China - Xiamen
Tel: 86-592-2388138
Fax: 86-592-2388130

China - Zhuhai
Tel: 86-756-3210040
Fax: 86-756-3210049

ASIA/PACIFIC

India - Bangalore
Tel: 91-80-3090-4444
Fax: 91-80-3090-4123

India - New Delhi
Tel: 91-11-4160-8631
Fax: 91-11-4160-8632

India - Pune
Tel: 91-20-2566-1512
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

Japan - Osaka
Tel: 81-66-152-7160
Fax: 81-66-152-9310

Japan - Yokohama
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea - Daegu
Tel: 82-53-744-4301
Fax: 82-53-744-4302

Korea - Seoul
Tel: 82-2-554-7200
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Malaysia - Kuala Lumpur
Tel: 60-3-6201-9857
Fax: 60-3-6201-9859

Malaysia - Penang
Tel: 60-4-227-8870
Fax: 60-4-227-4068

Philippines - Manila
Tel: 63-2-634-9065
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

Singapore
Tel: 65-6334-8870
Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan - Hsin Chu
Tel: 886-3-5778-366
Fax: 886-3-5770-955

Taiwan - Kaohsiung
Tel: 886-7-213-7828
Fax: 886-7-330-9305

Taiwan - Taipei
Tel: 886-2-2508-8600
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

Thailand - Bangkok
Tel: 66-2-694-1351
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

EUROPE

Austria - Wels
Tel: 43-7242-2244-39
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark - Copenhagen
Tel: 45-4450-2828
Fax: 45-4485-2829

France - Paris
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany - Munich
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy - Milan
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands - Drunen
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

Spain - Madrid
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

UK - Wokingham
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

10/26/12